2nd PREP
SECOND TERM

ALADWAA
Gem

2024

NEW HELLO

هدية مجانية لمدرسين

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

Contents

Module 3 Science and art

Unit 7
Technology and the future 3
Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 7 40

Unit 8
You are what you eat 43
Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 8 87

Review Unit 9
Monthly Models on Units 7 & 8 90
Watch, listen and make 92
Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 9 126

Review
Review C 129

Module 4 Our place in the world

Unit 10
We are what we wear 135
Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 10 169
Monthly Models on Units 9 & 10 172

Unit 11
The future of our planet 174
Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 11 212

Unit 12
Languages and learning 215
Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 12 249

Review
Review D 252

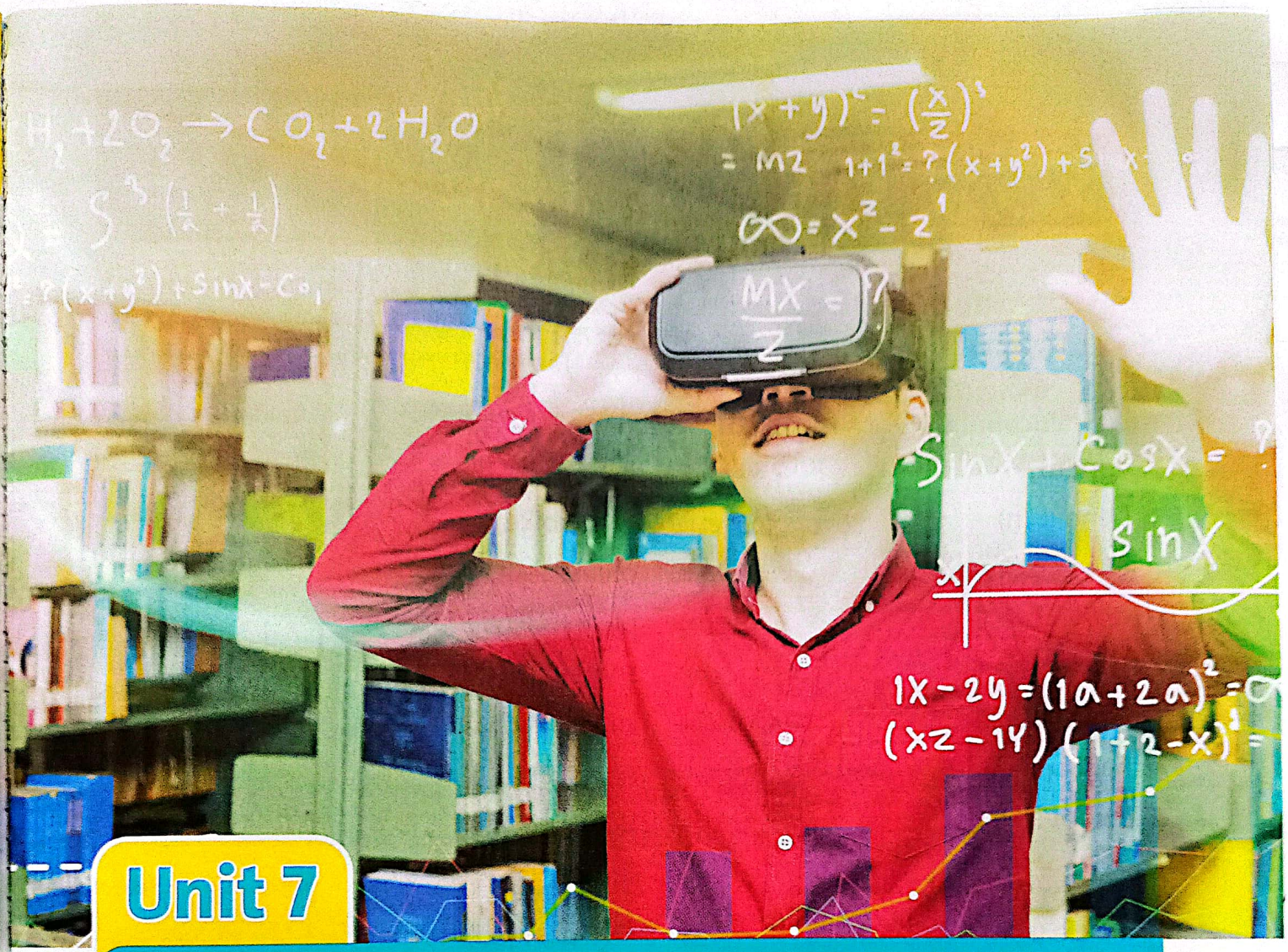
Answers
Listening Texts & Challenging Questions Answers 255

توزيع منهج اللغة الإنجليزية للصف الثانى الإعدادى للعام الدراسى 2024-2023

الفصل الدراسى الثانى

Month	New Hello! English for Preparatory Schools Year Two (SB + WB)
February	Unit 7
March	Units 8 + 9 + Review C + 10
April	Units 10 (cont.) + 11 + 12
May	Review D + General Revision

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض



Unit 7

Technology and the future

Objectives of the unit

Reading	A magazine article about online shopping; The Time Machine; a poster about the dangers of technology
Writing	A reply to an online message; a formal email about a problem with a delivery
Listening	A discussion about new inventions; people's problems with technology and suggested solutions
Speaking	Giving opinions about inventions and technology; a debate
Language	if/when + should for advice
Life Skills	Critical thinking: technological awareness

Tapescript

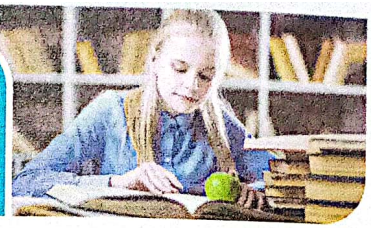
تشير لأسئلة كتاب الطالب SB تشير لأسئلة كتاب التدريبات WB

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

STUDY

Watch a video

Lessons 1 & 2



SB pages 2 - 5 | WB pages 70 & 71

A Vocabulary

- قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيدًا لدرجة الإتقان حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.
- قم باختبار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الذهاب لملحق التقويم وتسميع الكلمات الخاصة بالدرسين.

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

app (n)	تطبيق	invention (n)	اختراع
benefit (n)	فائدة	motorbike (n)	دراجة نارية
clever jacket (n)	سترة ذكية	online shopping (n)	التسوق عبر الإنترنت
delivery (n)	توصيل/تسليم	push (ed) (v)	يدفع
electricity (n)	كهرباء	shop (ped) online	يتسوق عبر الإنترنت
headphones (n)	سماعات الرأس	solar panels (n)	ألواح الطاقة الشمسية
helicopter (n)	طائرة عمودية/هليكوبتر	speed (n)	سرعة
invent (ed) (v)	يخترع	technology (n)	التكنولوجيا

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

article (n)	مقال	pass (ed) (v)	ينجح فى/يجتاز
businesses (n)	أعمال تجارية	prediction (n)	تنبؤ
description (n)	وصف	resources (n)	موارد
environment (n)	البيئة	science fiction (n)	خيال علمى
flying (adj)	طائر (شىء يطير)	used (adj)	مستخدم/مستعمل
free time (n)	وقت الفراغ	war (n)	حرب
owe (d) (v)	يدين	wing (n)	جناح

Check Point

Choose and complete: free - wing - speed - inventions

1. New cars have great ..... . They run very fast.
2. What do you like to do in your ..... time?
3. Scientists are working on new ..... .

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:

(n) = noun	(adj) = adjective	(prep) = preposition
(v) = verb	(adv) = adverb	(conj) = conjunction

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

do	the shopping	يقوم بالتسوق		a story	يؤلف قصة
have	a choice	لديه اختيار	make	electricity	يولد كهرباء
take	turns	يتبادل الأدوار		pollution	يسبب تلوثًا

Prepositions — حروف الجر

agree/disagree with	يتفق/لا يتفق مع	for or against	مع أو ضد
push into the air	يدفع فى الهواء	look online for	يبحث على الإنترنت عن
at the speed of	على سرعة	make into	يُحول إلى
change into	يتحول/ يتغير إلى	translate into	يترجم إلى
famous for	مشهور بـ	useful for	مفيد لـ
find out about	يعرف/يكتشف عن	wait for	ينتظر لـ

Check Point

Choose and complete: for - do - make

1. Scientists try to find new ways to ..... electricity.
2. My mother likes to ..... the shopping on Friday.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر.

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs — تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	P.P.	Present	Past simple	P.P.
become يصبح	became	become	fly يطير	flew	flown
drive يقود/يسوق	drove	driven	spend يقضى/ينفق	spent	spent
find يجد	found	found	wear يرتدى/يلبس	wore	worn

Words and Opposites — الكلمات وعكسها

Word — الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym) — عكسها
important هام	unimportant غير هام
online عبر الإنترنت	offline غير متصل بالإنترنت
pass ينجح فى	fail يفشل فى
save يدخر/يوفر	waste يهدر/يضيع
strong قوى	weak ضعيف
useful مفيد	useless عديم الفائدة

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

1 use/useful

use + شئ + to + inf. يستخدم ..... لـ

- This clever jacket uses an app to make you warmer.

useful for + something/v.ing مفيد لـ

- My new car will be very useful for travelling.

2 help + مفعول + (inf. / to + inf.) يساعد

- It helps people speak/to speak other languages.

3 spend + وقت + (v. + ing) يقضى **/ waste + وقت + (v. + ing)** يهدر **/ prefer + (v. + ing)** يفضل

- I don't want to spend lots of time travelling to the shops.
- I don't like to waste time waiting for a delivery.
- I prefer going to real shops in my city.

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Words and Synonyms — الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
pass	ينجح فى	succeed in	ينجح فى
useful	مفيد	helpful	مساعد/مفيد

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
invent (v)	يخترع	-ion		تحويل الفعل لاسم		invention (n)	اختراع
pollute (v)	يلوث					pollution (n)	تلوث
use (v)	يستخدم	-ful		تحويل الفعل لصفة		useful (adj)	مفيد

هذا الجزء يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المتشابهة فى الهجاء ولكن مختلفة فى المعنى.

Similar Spelling - Different Meaning

Word	الكلمة	Similar word	الكلمة المشابهة
invent	يخترع	invite	يدعو
invention	اختراع	invitation	دعوة

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

B Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-listening question:

- In your opinion, what is the best invention you have used?

Listen to four people. Match the inventions 1 – 4 on page 2 with the people who talk about them. SB page 3

(Is it a motorbike (1)? Is it a helicopter (2)? No, this invention is half-motorbike and half-helicopter! It can push you into the air at the speed (3) of a fast car!)

Hatem Wow! That looks so cool! I'm not sure it's very useful though. It won't be able to fly very high, will it?

(When these headphones (4) hear another language, they can translate (5) it into your language.)

Manal I think lots of people will want to buy one of these; they'll be very useful for travelling. It won't help people to speak other languages though, will it? It's only good for listening.

(1) دراجة نارية
(2) هليكوبتر/طائرة عمودية
(3) سرعة
(4) سماعات الرأس
(5) يترجم
(6) ستره ذكية
(7) تطبيق
(8) ألواح الطاقة الشمسية
(9) اختراع
(10) ينتج كهرباء

(This clever jacket (6) uses an app (7) to make you warmer when the weather is cold.)

Tarek I think this is a good idea for people in cold places. It won't be very useful for me though! Maybe they will make one to make people feel cooler. That would be good here in the summer!

(Change roads into solar panels (8)! This invention (9) uses strong glass that you can drive on and make electricity (10) at the same time.)

Sawsan I think that is an amazing invention. I hope they will build lots of these in Egypt. We have lots of sun and we could make lots of electricity.

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

invention /Invenʃən/ panel /pænəl/ electricity /Ilektrɪsɪti/

Post-listening question: - Which invention do you like most? Why?

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

Pre-reading question: - What type of things do you like to buy? Why?

Read the article. Can you find any of the phrases from Exercise 2 in the text? Use your dictionary if necessary.

SB page 4

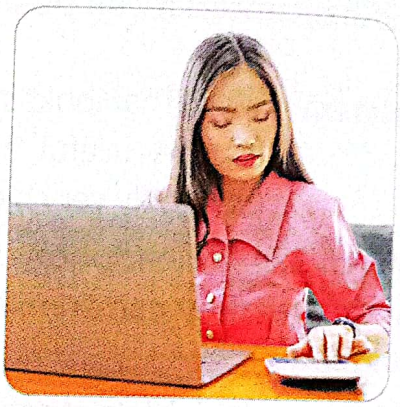
Shopping online – Yes or No?

Injy – I love online shopping (1)!

Shopping online is great! Firstly, it saves me time (2).

I don't want to spend lots of time travelling to the shops. I can stay at home and buy the things I want in a few minutes. Secondly, I have more choices (3) online. Also, if more people shop online (4), there will be fewer cars on the road and less pollution (5)! I will do all my shopping (6) online when I am older.

(1) التسوق عبر الإنترنت
(2) يوفر وقتنا
(3) خيارات
(4) يتسوق عبر الإنترنت
(5) تلوث
(6) يقوم بكل التسوق
(7) توصيل/تسليم
(8) أعمال تجارية



Baher – I prefer going to real shops in my city.

Every time I buy clothes online, the thing that I buy is wrong! At a shop, I can see what I am buying and I can try it first. Also, I don't like to waste time waiting for a delivery (7) – I want things now!

If everyone shops online, the shops in our towns and cities will close. If they close, then lots of other businesses (8) like cafés will close, too.

Note:

pollution /pəluːʃən/ delivery /dɪlɪvəri/ تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

Post-reading question: - What's Baher's problem with online shopping?

Choose the correct words.

WB page 71

Some people think that online shopping **saves** time and money. Other people like to **spend** time with friends at the shops. We all **have** the choice to either do online shopping or go to shops, but you need to think **of** the benefits of both first.

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering Understanding Applying Analysing Evaluating Creating

Practise more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I asked my aunt to ..... a French article into Arabic. الفيوم ٢٠٢٣
   a) build b) check c) translate d) damage
2. There's a/an ..... on this phone which tells me the weather in my city. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣
   a) app b) screen c) battery d) charge
3. ..... are like planes, but they do not have wings. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣
   a) Computers b) Ships c) Helicopters d) Motorbikes
4. In your opinion, what is the most important ....., the mobile phone or the plane? قنا ٢٠٢٣
   a) speed b) shopping c) invitation d) invention
5. I don't have internet, so I can't play ..... games. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢
   a) offline b) online c) light d) line
6. When my father has ..... time, he will take us to the park.
   a) no b) offline c) free d) online
7. We should use ..... to make electricity from the sun. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣
   a) plates b) solar panels c) magazines d) chemicals
8. People think that they ..... many choices online.
   a) have b) wear c) stay d) save
9. This invention can push you ..... the speed of a fast car.
   a) on b) at c) in d) for
10. Reading books helps us to spend a nice and ..... time.
    a) flying b) used c) famous d) useful
11. Ahmed ..... his driving test. He has to practise a lot. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣
    a) passed b) fell c) failed d) succeeded
12. Egypt is famous ..... growing cotton. سوهاج ٢٠٢٣
    a) by b) on c) for d) to
13. You can ..... money when you buy from that shop. Things are cheaper in it. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
    a) stay b) waste c) lose d) save
14. My new phone doesn't work. I will ask the assistant to ..... it. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٢
    a) change b) break c) invent d) invite
15. Recycling can help us get rid of ..... . القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
    a) invention b) production c) pollution d) shopping
16. Are you ..... or against online shopping?
    a) for b) at c) into d) to

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

C Language

The future with "will" المستقبل

Affirmative الإثبات

Subject الفاعل + will ('ll) + inf.

We **will travel** to England next week.

Negative النفى

Subject الفاعل + will not (won't) + inf.

My father **will not (won't) come** late tonight.

Question السؤال

1. Yes/No question:

Will + subject الفاعل + inf.?

Will you **travel** to Alexandria next holiday?

2. Wh- question:

Question Word + will + subject الفاعل + inf.?

Where will you go next weekend?

Usage الاستخدام

1 We use **will** and **will not** (won't) to talk about future predictions.

١ - تُستخدم للتحدث عن التنبؤات المستقبلية. (تنبؤ بدون دليل).

- The new bikes **will be** very useful for travelling.
- He **won't go** to the club next weekend.
- What invention do you hope we **will see** in the future?

2 We use **if/when** to talk about things in the future which we think will probably happen.

٢ - نستخدم (إذا/عندما) للتحدث عن أشياء فى المستقبل نعتقد أنها من المحتمل أن تحدث.

If/ When

If/When + subj. + present simple مضارع بسيط , subj. + will/won't + inf.

Subject + will/won't + inf. + if/when + subj. + present simple مضارع بسيط

- **If** everyone **shops** online, the shops in our towns and cities **will close**.
- I **will do** all my shopping online **when** I **am** older.

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

تمكنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال
تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Got it ?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 Sara will buy a new car if she ..... (have) a lot of money.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (has) لأن if يسبقها will + inf. ويتبعها مضارع بسيط وفاعل الجملة she مفرد.

2 If I finish studying my lessons early today, I ..... (go) to the party.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (will go) لأن If يتبعها مضارع بسيط ثم مستقبل.

3 ..... (you/watch) TV if you finish your homework early?

- الإجابة الصحيحة (Will you watch) لأن if يتبعها مضارع بسيط ويسبقها مستقبل بسيط و هنا صيغة سؤال.

لاحظ

١- يستخدم المستقبل مع بعض التعبيرات التالية:

I'm sure - I think - I promise - I hope - maybe - in the future - soon

- **Maybe** they **will make** a jacket to help people be cooler.
- **I hope** they **will build** lots of these roads in Egypt.

٢- عند التعبير عن القدرة على عمل شىء فى المستقبل نستخدم:

Subject الفاعل + **(will/won't) be able to** + **inf.** سوف يكون قادرًا على

- If my mother has more free time, we'**ll be able to go** out.
- If I'm busy, I **won't be able to go** shopping with my friends.

٣- استخدام (will) مع المجهول passive:

Object المفعول به + **(will/won't)** + **be** + **P.P.** التصريف الثالث للفعل

- I hope the flying motorbike **will be invented** soon.

Will + **object** المفعول به + **be** + **P.P.?**

- **Will** these inventions **be used** very much in Egypt?

Got it ?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 Basel ..... (able) to pass all his exams if he studies hard.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (will be able) لأنها تعبر عن قدرة فى المستقبل.

2 The meeting ..... (will cancel) tomorrow.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (will be cancelled) لأن الجملة تبدأ بالمفعول وهى فى زمن المستقبل لوجود tomorrow.

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

PRACTICE

Language Exercises

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I think electric cars will ..... pollution in the future. دمياط ٢٠٢٣
   a) reduced b) reducing c) reduce d) reduces
2. We ..... out if the weather is fine tomorrow. الفيوم ٢٠٢٣
   a) go b) will go c) goes d) went
3. In 30 years, the world ..... different. المنيا ٢٠٢٣
   a) be b) will be c) will d) is
4. If Ahmed ..... hard, he will win the race. قنا ٢٠٢٣
   a) will train b) trained c) trains d) train
5. What ..... happen if he is late for school?
   a) had b) does c) did d) will
6. We will play football ..... we are free. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٢
   a) why b) if c) where d) how
7. If I ..... to the shops, I will spend a lot of money. أسيوط ٢٠٢٣
   a) go b) went c) goes d) going
8. When you ..... tired, you should have a break. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣
   a) are b) be c) were d) will be
9. **A:** Will you visit Aswan? **B:** Yes, I ..... . بنى سويف ٢٠٢٢
   a) would b) will c) won't d) do
10. Who ..... meet Ahmed at the airport when he arrives?
    a) will b) does c) did d) would

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. If you do exercise every day, you ..... (won't) be fit. سوهاج ٢٠٢٣
2. A new restaurant ..... (open) in the city centre next Monday.
3. In the future, we ..... (be) able to travel by rocket. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
4. Sama ..... (not/travel) abroad when she leaves school. بني سويف ٢٠٢٣
5. I will clean the living room, but I ..... (clean) the kitchen.
6. If you ..... (not/study) hard for the exam, you won't pass. قنا ٢٠٢٣

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

D Skills

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.

1. Speaking

Discussing new inventions

مناقشة الاختراعات الحديثة

Situation	ما يقال فى هذا الموقف	Response	جملة الرد

online

Which of the inventions do you think will become the most used? Why?
أى من الاختراعات تعتقد أنه سيصبح الأكثر استخدامًا؟ ولماذا؟

I think the headphones will become the most used because we need to communicate with people from different countries.
أعتقد أن سماعات الأذن ستصبح الأكثر استخدامًا؛ لأننا بحاجة للتواصل مع أشخاص من مختلف الدول.

Which of the things do you think won't be used very much in Egypt? Why not?
أى من الأشياء تعتقد أنها لن تصبح مستخدمة بشكل كبير فى مصر؟ ولمَ لا؟

I agree that the jacket won't be very useful in Egypt because the weather is fine.
أعتقد أنه لن يتم استخدام الجاكيت بشكل كبير؛ لأن الجو رائع فى مصر.

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialogue:

Hadeer and Shady are talking about new inventions.

Hadeer : Hello, Shady. How are you today?
Shady : Hi, Hadeer. (1)..... .
Hadeer : Do you agree that we will have more inventions in the future?
Shady : (2)..... .
Hadeer : (3).....?
Shady : I hope to see the flying motorbike.
Hadeer : (4).....?
Shady : Because it can push you into the air at a speed of a fast car.
Hadeer : So, can you ride a motorbike?
Shady : (5)..... .

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

2. Write it right

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.

How to write about new inventions

كيفية الكتابة عن الاختراعات الحديثة

- Inventions are very important because they make our life easier and better.
- I think they will invent (اسم الاختراع).
- The (الاختراع) can (نكتب تفاصيل عمًا يمكن للاختراع القيام به).
- I also think they will invent (اسم الاختراع).
- New inventions will have a great effect on our lives.

Writing tips

Brainstorm ideas and organise your topic.

قبل البدء فى الكتابة فكر جيدًا فيما سوف تتحدث عنه و قم بترتيب أفكارك.

Example

New inventions

Inventions are very important because they make our lives easier and better. Scientists try hard to invent new things. I think they will invent new headphones. These headphones can translate any language. When these headphones hear another language, they can translate it into your language. I also think they will invent a new machine that can push you into the air at the speed of a fast car. It's half-motorbike and half-helicopter. They will probably invent a new jacket. It's a clever jacket. It uses an app to make you warmer when the weather is cold. There will be new roads. They will change roads into solar panels. These roads use strong glass that you can drive on and make electricity at the same time. New inventions will have a great effect on our lives.

Check Point

Write a paragraph on:

"The most useful invention"

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

1. In the future, we won't go to the ..... for holidays.
   a) beach b) sky c) moon d) cinema
2. People will travel to the moon by ..... .
   a) rocks b) metros c) planes d) rockets
3. The journey will take only ..... hours.
   a) two b) twenty c) twelve d) ten
4. The rockets will be very ..... .
   a) slow b) bad c) weak d) fast

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Dina and Haidy are talking about mobile phones. المنوفية ٢٠٢٣

Dina : Do you know that Ola bought a new mobile?
Haidy : (1)..... . She phoned me yesterday. What do you think of mobile phones?
Dina : (2)..... .
Haidy : The most important invention! Why do you think that?
Dina : (3)..... .
Haidy : Save time! (4).....?
Dina : You can phone anyone at any time for a low price.
Haidy : (5).....?
Dina : Yes, they have some disadvantages as hurting your eyes if you use them for a long time.
Haidy : That's right.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Some people think that online shopping ..... time and money. WB
   a) saves b) uses c) makes d) spends
2. I have many ..... on my smart phone like Facebook and Telegram. سوهاج ٢٠٢٣
   a) jobs b) spaces c) apps d) headphones
3. The desert is a difficult ..... to live in. الجيزة ٢٠٢٢
   a) park b) village c) city d) environment
4. Many people can ..... their shopping online. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣
   a) go b) do c) save d) waste
5. To ..... is to change words into another language. المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
   a) state b) transport c) feed d) translate

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

6. Tourists visit Egypt because it is famous ..... its ancient art. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
a) by b) for c) of d) at

7. Do you know who ..... the mobile phone? الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
a) forgave b) invited c) did d) invented

8. I think we will ..... more robots in our schools. بور سعيد ٢٠٢٢
a) has b) having c) had d) have

9. In the future, we ..... be able to travel by rocket. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
a) are b) would c) could d) will

10. If you have a car, ... drive me to work? WB
a) will you b) you will c) you would d) have you

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. If you eat too much, you will ..... (putting) on weight. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
2. I think Aseel ..... (win) the match. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
3. We always will be able ..... (getting) help from each other.
4. If more people shop online, there ..... (are) fewer cars on the road.

5 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"Modern inventions" بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

Challenging Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

1. Do you think fewer accidents ..... when we use driverless cars?
a) will be happened b) will happen
c) happens d) are happened

2. Dinner will ..... in a minute.
a) served b) serves c) be served d) serve

3. I don't think he ..... tomorrow. He is very ill.
a) will come b) won't come c) comes d) doesn't come

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

STUDY

Watch a video

Lessons 3 & 4

SB pages 6 - 8 | WB pages 72 & 73

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

addicted (adj) (to)	مدمن (لـ)	headache (n)	صداع
advice (n)	نصيحة	lever (n)	رافعة/عتلة/مقبض
check (ed) (v)	يراجع/يفحص	model (n)	نموذج
climate change (n)	التغير المناخى	pain (n)	ألم
copy (y ied) (n/v)	نسخة/ينسخ	suddenly (adv)	فجأة
expert (n/adj)	خبير	take away (v)	يُبعِد
explore (d) (v)	يستكشف	traveller (n)	مسافر

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

allow (ed) (v)	يسمح	laugh (ed) (v)	يضحك
communicate (d) (v)	يتواصل	planet (n)	كوكب
handle (n)	مقبض	reply (y ied) (v/n)	يرد/استجابة/رد
illness (n)	مرض	sound like	يبدو مثل
instead (adv)	بدلًا من	strange (adj)	غريب

Check Point

Choose and complete: expert - check - model - handle

1. The boy is playing with a ..... plane.
2. He's an ..... at cooking good cheap meals.
3. I ..... my email every day.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

build/make	a machine	يبنى آلة	make	friends with	يكون صداقات مع
drop	rubbish	يلقى القمامة	share	a photo	ينشر صورة
have	a break	يأخذ استراحة	tidy	a bedroom	يرتب غرفة النوم
	a headache	لديه صداع	feel	tired/ worried	يشعر بالتعب/ بالقلق
give	advice	يعطى نصيحة			

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

Prepositions

حروف الجر

believe in	يؤمن بـ	pick up	يلتقط
by mistake	عن طريق الخطأ	a problem with	مشكلة فى
for the first time	لأول مرة	talk (ed) to	يتكلم إلى
on social media	على وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى	through time/space	عبر الزمن أو الفضاء
for a long time	لمدة طويلة	worried about	قلق على

Check Point

Choose and complete: about - with - drop - share

1. You shouldn't ..... rubbish in the park.
2. There is a problem ..... my car.
3. He is worried ..... his exams.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر.

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	P.P.	Present	Past simple	P.P.
build يبنى	built	built	show يبين/يعرض	showed	shown
say يقول	said	said	tell يخبر	told	told

Words and Opposites

الكلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym) عكسها
disappear يختفى	appear يظهر
horrible رهيب/فظيع	fantastic رائع
inside داخل	outside خارج
impossible مستحيل	possible ممكن
pull يسحب/يشد/يجر	push يدفع
turn on يفتح (جهاز)	turn off يغلق (جهاز)

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

1 use + شئ + for + (n/v. + ing) يستخدم لـ

- We use the pen for writing.

2 stop + v. + ing يتوقف عن (فعل شىء)

- You should stop watching too much TV.

3 take + وقت + to + inf. يستغرق

- It took me two years to build the time machine.

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 We took 7 hours ..... Siwa from Cairo.
a) reaching b) reach c) to reach d) to reaching

2 I always use my phone ..... emails and taking photos.
a) sending b) for sending c) send d) to sending

3 Stop ..... about your son. He's an adult.
a) to worry b) to worrying c) worrying d) worry

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ

Definitions	التعريفات
addicted مدمن	always needs to do or have something
by mistake عن طريق الخطأ	without planning or wanting to do something
disappear يختفى	suddenly go somewhere and become impossible to find
explore يستكشف	look around a place where you have never been in order to find out what is there
impossible مستحيل	if an action or event is impossible, it cannot happen or be done
lever رافعة	a handle that you push or pull to make a machine work
pull يسحب	hold something and move it towards you
social media وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى	websites and apps that allow people to talk to each other on the internet

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

Words and Synonyms

الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
horrible	رهيب/فظيع	terrible	فظيع
turn on	يفتح (جهاز)	switch on	يفتح (جهاز)

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
head (n)	رأس	-ache		تعطى معنى ألم		headache (n)	صداع

Prefix البادئة

Prefix	البادئة	Function	الوظيفة	Word	الكلمة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
dis-		تعطى عكس المعنى		appear (v)	يظهر	disappear (v)	يختفى
im-				possible (adj)	ممكن	impossible (adj)	غير ممكن/ مستحيل

هذا الجزء يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المتشابهة فى الهجاء ولكن مختلفة فى المعنى.

Similar Spelling - Different Meaning

Word	الكلمة	Similar word	الكلمة المشابهة
drop	يلقى	drip	ينقط
lever	رافعة/عتلة/مقبض	liver	الكبد (عضو جسد)
model	نموذج	medal	ميدالية
planet	كوكب	plant	نبات
reply	يرد	replay	يعيد التشغيل

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

B Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-listening question:

- What are your problems with new technology?

Listen to these four people talking about the problems they have with technology.

SB page 6

Narrator **Shady**

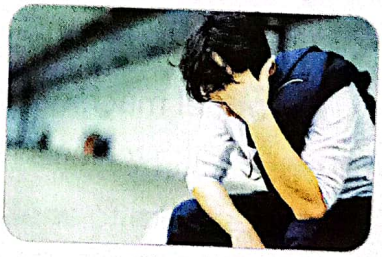
Shady I'm not sleeping very well at the moment. I usually watch some videos on the internet before I go to sleep but sometimes I watch them for a few hours and then I can't sleep. My head often hurts (1) lots in the morning, too.

Narrator **Hala**

Hala I found this great online (2) game but I didn't know that when I got new things on it, it costs (3) real money! I hope (4) my parents aren't going to be angry when I tell them how much money I spent.

Narrator **Randa**

Randa I love social media (5), I love watching videos online and I love talking to my friends on my phone. But now I feel worried if I don't have my phone or I can't check (6) it. I think it is starting to become a problem.



Narrator **Adam**

Adam My friends and I like to put funny (7) pictures online but when I share (8) a photo, everyone says my clothes are not cool or my hair looks strange (9). It makes me feel sad.

(1) يؤلم	(2) عبر الإنترنت	(3) يكلف
(4) يأمل	(5) مواقع التواصل الاجتماعى	(6) يفحص
(7) مضحك	(8) يشارك	(9) غريب

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

social /soʊʃəl/ picture /pɪktʃəʳ/

Post-listening question:

- What does Randa like doing on the internet?

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

Pre-reading question:

- Would you like to travel in time? Where would you like to go? Why?

Lesson 4

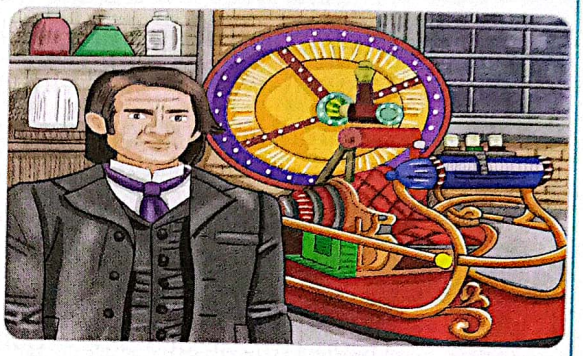
Read part of the story *The Time Machine* and answer the questions.

SB page 8

The Time Machine (1)

by H. G. Wells

London, England, 1895



A group of friends meet for dinner at the Time Traveller's house. After dinner, the Time Traveller (2) asks his friends if they think that it is possible to travel through time.

"It's impossible (3)!" they reply, "We can only travel through space (4), not time."

The Time Traveller shows them a small model of a machine that he has in his hand.

"This is a copy of a machine that I believe (5) can go through time. It took me two years to build," he tells them. The friends laugh.

"Pull (6) this lever (7)," he tells one of them.

They feel some wind and then the machine suddenly disappears (8)!

"Where is it?" the other men ask.

"The model machine is in the future," the Time Traveller says. "Would you like to see the real machine?" he asks.

He takes them to another room. Inside the room is another, bigger machine. It is not finished.

"In this machine," he says "I will explore (9) the past and the future!"

(1) آلة الزمن
(2) مسافر عبر الزمن
(3) مستحيل
(4) الفضاء
(5) يؤمن/يعتقد
(6) يسحب/يجر/يشد
(7) رافعة/مقبض
(8) يختفى
(9) يستكشف

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

machine /məʃi:n/ lever /li:vər/

Post-reading questions:

1. What would the Time Traveller do with the time machine?
2. How long did he take to build this machine?

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering Understanding Applying Analysing Evaluating Creating

Practise more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It was cloudy this morning, but the clouds soon ..... when the sun came out. دمياط ٢٠٢٣

a) disappointed b) appeared c) disappeared d) striped

2. That new hotel looks ..... . I really don't like it. القليوبية ٢٠٢٣

a) nice b) wonderful c) horrible d) fantastic

3. He has a ..... so he should take some medicine. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣

a) headache b) motorbike c) helicopter d) invention

4. When I visited London, I bought a ..... of the Big Ben Clock. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢

a) metal b) machine c) medal d) model

5. He is ..... to computer games, he always plays every day. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣

a) addicted b) energy c) good d) nice

6. There are a lot of floods because of ..... . أسيوط ٢٠٢٣

a) climate change b) planting trees c) schools d) drought

7. I read a book about travelling ..... time.

a) at b) for c) through d) inside

8. Students use English to ..... with others. سوهاج ٢٠٢٣

a) help b) communicate c) stay d) play

9. I stayed home from school because of my ..... .

a) model b) handle c) planet d) illness

10. The film was funny. We ..... a lot.

a) passed b) took c) invented d) laughed

11. Many people use social ..... to communicate with each other. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣

a) internet b) headphone c) media d) invention

12. Online courses ..... us to study in our own home.

a) go b) make c) give d) allow

13. Learning a foreign language is a great way to ..... other cultures. سوهاج ٢٠٢٣

a) become b) explore c) work d) pay

14. Don't touch the ..... or the machine will start. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣

a) liver b) leaf c) lever d) loaf

15. I am sorry I took your pen ..... mistake. أسيوط ٢٠٢٢

a) by b) in c) for d) from

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

C Language

Giving advice إعطاء النصح

Subject الفاعل + should + inf. (ينبغى أن)

- You should eat more vegetables.
- You should turn your mobile off while sleeping.

Subject الفاعل + shouldn't + inf. (ينبغى ألا)

- You shouldn't smoke.
- Children shouldn't eat a lot of sweets.

Got it ?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Omar ..... (should) eat too much chocolate. It's bad for his teeth.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (shouldn't) لأنها نصيحة بعدم فعل شىء.

2. You should ..... (drinking) water every day.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (drink) لأن should يتبعها فعل فى المصدر.

لاحظ

- يمكن استخدام (should) مع (if/when) عند إعطاء نصيحة كالتالى:

If/When + subj. + present simple مضارع بسيط / subj. + should / shouldn't + inf.

- If you see people being horrible online, you should tell your parents.
- You should be careful when you repair an electric machine.

Subject + should / shouldn't + inf. + if/when + subj. + present simple مضارع بسيط

- You should ask your father for help if you have a problem.

Got it ?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. You should revise well when you ..... (had) an exam.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (have) لأن الجمله فى الحالة الشرطية الأولى، ولابد أن يكون فعل الشرط فى زمن المضارع البسيط.

2. When you go to bed, you ..... (shouldn't) turn off the lights.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (should) لأن بعد when مضارع بسيط والمعنى يدل على النصيحة.

3. If someone helps you, you ..... (will) say "thank you".

- الإجابة الصحيحة (should) لأن المعنى يدل على النصيحة وبعد If مضارع بسيط.

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

PRACTICE

Language Exercises

Remembering Understanding Applying Analysing Evaluating Creating

Practise more

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You should ..... sure that you eat all types of healthy food. القليوبية ٢٠٢٣
   a) makes b) made c) making d) make
2. You should help your mother with the housework when she ..... tired. الغربية ٢٠٢٣
   a) is b) doesn't c) had d) wasn't
3. People shouldn't ..... fast in the city centre. بني سويف ٢٠٢٢
   a) driven b) driving c) drove d) drive
4. If you feel tired, you ..... have a rest. الجيزة ٢٠٢٢
   a) shall b) shouldn't c) should d) won't
5. When it rains, you ..... take your umbrella. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) should b) shouldn't c) mustn't d) need
6. You ..... make noise if your father is asleep. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
   a) should b) will c) could d) shouldn't
7. You should do sports ..... you have free time.
   a) so b) when c) although d) but
8. You have a great job. You ..... change it. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) are b) should c) shouldn't d) aren't
9. ..... tell my teacher if I don't understand?
   a) I should b) I have c) Should I d) Did I
10. You shouldn't ..... up late. It's bad for you. قنا ٢٠٢٣
    a) stayed b) stay c) staying d) stays

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. You shouldn't ..... (wasting) your time. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
2. What should I ..... (doing) about my problem? سوهاج ٢٠٢٣
3. You shouldn't ..... (drinking) so much coffee. It's bad for you. المنوفية ٢٠٢٢
4. If you are in a library, you ..... (should) make noise. سوهاج ٢٠٢٣
5. You should ..... (cleaned) your teeth every day.
6. If you ..... (not/know) someone, you shouldn't make friends with them online.

SB

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

D Skills

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.

1. Speaking

Discussing new technology

مناقشة التكنولوجيا الحديثة

online

What types of technology do you use every day?
ما أنواع التكنولوجيا التى تستخدمها كل يوم؟

I often use my mobile phone, laptop and the headphones.
استخدم الهاتف المحمول واللاب توب وسماعات الأذن.

What do you use them for?
فيمَ تستخدمهم؟

I use them to log on to the internet and for music.
استخدمهم للدخول على الإنترنت وللموسيقى.

Which is the most important piece of technology for you?
ما هى أهم قطعة تكنولوجيا لديك؟

I think I'm addicted to my mobile phone.
أعتقد بأننى مدمن لهاتفى المحمول.

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialogue:

Farah and Sara are talking about types of technology. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣

Farah : Do you know much about technology?
Sara : (1)..... .
Farah : What type of technology do you use every day?
Sara : (2)..... .
Farah : (3).....?
Sara : I use the internet to communicate with my friends online.
Farah : (4).....?
Sara : Yes, sometimes I've problems online.
Farah : What should you do if you are worried about something online?
Sara : (5)..... .

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

2. Write it right

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.

1. How to write about problems with technology

كيف تكتب عن المشاكل التى تسببها التكنولوجيا

- Technology has made life much better and easier.
- It's hard to live without technology.
- Many people start facing problems when they use technology for a long time.
- We can call it "technology addiction".

Example

Problems with technology

Technology has made life much better and easier. It is hard to live without modern technology such as the internet, mobile phones, video games and other technological wonders. Sadly, many people start facing problems when they use technology for a long time. We can call it "technology addiction". Most young people are addicted to their phones. They spend too much time using social media. They also spend a long time playing video games online. Many people have been addicted to using the internet for a long time. This may cause headaches for them. In addition, they can waste their time doing useless things.

2. How to write about shopping online

كيف تكتب عن التسوق عبر الإنترنت

From : maged@student.com **To** : seif@student.com
Subject : Online shopping
Dear Seif,

How are you and your family? I want to tell you about online shopping. Some people prefer shopping online, but others don't. Most people think that online shopping is great. It saves time. People don't need to spend lots of time travelling to the shops. They can stay at home and buy the things they want in a few minutes. They have more choices online. If more people shop online, there will be fewer cars on the road and less pollution. Old people can do all their shopping online. On the other hand, other people don't like online shopping. They prefer going to real shops. At a shop, they can see what they are buying and try it first. They don't like to waste time waiting for a delivery. They think that if everyone shops online, many shops will close. If they close, then lots of other businesses like cafés will close, too. Do you have any experience with online shopping?

Best wishes.
Maged

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

TEST YOURSELF

Take a test

Unit 7 Lessons (3 & 4)

17.5

1 Read the following, then answer the questions:

أسيوط ٢٠٢٢

Social media has become an important part of our daily lives. We use it to communicate with friends, share our ideas and photos, and know the latest news. However, using too much social media can also have negative effects on our mental and physical health. For example, spending too much time on social media can make you feel worried and lonely. **It** can also cause us to have ***poor*** sleep habits, eye problems, and problems with our back. It's important to be careful of how much time we spend on social media and to take breaks when necessary. We shouldn't be addicted to social media or any technology. By doing so, we can enjoy the benefits of social media without hurting ourselves.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the passage? .....
2. What does the underlined pronoun "**It**" refer to? .....
3. How do you think we can enjoy the benefits of social media without harming ourselves? .....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. There are some ..... effects of using social media.
   a) positive b) negative c) negative and positive d) no
5. Spending too much time on social media can make you ..... to it.
   a) happy b) worried c) famous d) addicted
6. The word "***poor***" in the passage means ..... .
   a) bad b) rich c) good d) strong

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Medhat can drive because he ..... his driving test. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) passed b) succeeded c) failed d) won
2. He didn't intend to break the glass. He broke it by ..... . القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) mistake b) occasion c) luck d) hand
3. The ..... of the door is broken, so we can't open it.
   a) liver b) traveller c) handle d) illness
4. My mum always gives me good ..... when I feel sad.
   a) device b) advice c) space d) pain
5. My mother was worried ..... me when I came home late. القليوبية ٢٠٢٣
   a) about b) of c) with d) for
6. My brother likes the internet. He plays ..... games on it. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣
   a) online b) offline c) inside d) outside

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

7. My little sister is ..... sweets. She always wants to eat them! الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
a) by mistake b) horrible c) addicted to d) social media

8. I have a party tonight. What should I .....?
a) wear b) wears c) wearing d) wore

9. What should I do if I ..... a problem with my friends?
a) had b) has c) will have d) have

10. It's a terrible film. You ..... watch it.
a) should b) shouldn't c) must d) haven't

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. If you want to get to the park quickly, you ..... (take) the bus. WB
2. Children shouldn't ..... (drinking) sugary drinks. It's not very healthy. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣
3. You should ..... (brushed) your teeth every day. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
4. Should I drink hot tea if I ..... (has) a headache?

4 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"Positive and negative sides of technology" أسيوط ٢٠٢٣

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Challenging Questions

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

1. Do you think ..... (should/I/read) this book?
2. I don't think you ..... (shouldn't) go to bed late.
3. I ..... (shouldn't) eat more of these although I hate them.

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

STUDY

Watch a video

Lessons 5 & 6

SB pages 9 - 11 | WB pages 74 & 76

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

damage (d) (v)	يدمر/يضر	hearing (n)	السمع
damaged (adj)	تالف	improve (d) (v)	يحسن
danger (n)	خطر	order (ed) (v)	يطلب/يأمر
debate (n)	مناظرة	robot (n)	إنسان آلى
surname (n)	لقب العائلة	text (ed) (v)	يرسل رسالة نصية

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

aged (adj)	بالغ من العمر	healthy (adj)	صحى/بصحة جيدة
expressions (n)	تعبيرات	missing (adj)	مفقود
headings (n)	عناوين	poster (n)	ملصق إعلانى
health (n)	صحة	title (n)	عنوان (كتاب/مقال)

Check Point

Choose and complete: aged - damaged - text - improve

1. On school days, I always ..... my friends after doing my homework.
2. My grandfather, ... eighty, is very helpful.
3. I'll take courses to ..... my English.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

do	exercises	يمارس التمارين الرياضية	give	a headache	يسبب صداعًا
get	a headache	يصاب بصداع		a title	يعطى عنوانًا
	enough sleep	يحصل على قدر كاف من النوم	go	online	يتصل بالإنترنت

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

Prepositions

حروف الجر

change for	يغير بشىء جديد	on screens	على الشاشات
for the correct age	للعمر الصحيح	late into the night	فى وقت متأخر من الليل
from my point of view	من وجهة نظرى	look forward to + v + ing	يتطلع إلى
go on holiday	يذهب فى إجازة	of this age	فى هذا العصر
hear from	يتلقى رسالة/أخبار من	think of/about	يفكر/يعتقد فى
in my opinion	فى رأيى	write down	يدون

Check Point

Choose and complete: from - on - gives - gets

1. Watching too much videos ..... me a headache.
2. They went ..... holiday last week.
3. I didn't hear ..... my friend a month ago.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر.

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	P.P.	Present		Past simple	P.P.
bring	يجلب/يحضر	brought	brought	wear	يرتدى/يلبس	wore	worn

Words and Opposites

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
dangerous	خطير	safe	آمن
formal	رسمى	informal	غير رسمى
good for	مفيد لـ	bad for	ضار لـ
interesting	شيق	boring	ممل
loud	عالٍ/صاخب	low	منخفض
positive	إيجابى	negative	سلبى

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

1 look + adj.

يبدو

- That dress looks interesting.

2 would like (to + inf./noun)

يود أن

- I would like a piece of cake, please.
- Salma would like to go for a walk.

3 Ending an email

خاتمة الإيميل

- Best Wishes أطيب الأمانى / Kind Regards أطيب التحيات / See you soon أراك قريبًا

وقبل التوقيع بالاسم

- Yours faithfully تفضلوا بقبول فائق الاحترام / Yours sincerely المخلص لكم

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Words and Synonyms

الكلمات ومرادفها

Word الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning) مرادفها
dangerous خطير	serious خطير
healthy صحى	well صحى

Suffix اللاحقة

Word الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
danger (n) خطر	-ous	تحويل الاسم لصفة	dangerous (adj) خطير

Prefix البادئة

Prefix البادئة	Function الوظيفة	Word الكلمة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
in-	تعطى عكس المعنى	formal (adj) رسمى	informal (adj) غير رسمى
un-		healthy (adj) صحى	unhealthy (adj) غير صحى

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 5

Pre-reading question:

- Have you ever had a health problem because you spend much time on the internet?

Look at the headings in the poster. What problems could technology bring to these things? *SB page 9*

The dangers (1) of technology

Sleep: Many people text (2), check social media or watch videos online late into the night. Then they don't get enough sleep.

Eye problems (3): If you spend a lot of time on screens, you can have eye problems and headaches.

Ear problems (4): Listening to loud music or films through headphones can damage (5) your hearing (6).

Exercise (7): Many people spend hours playing video games or watching TV and don't spend enough time outside doing exercise.

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمة التالية:

headache /hedeIk/

Post-reading questions:

1. Technology sometimes has a bad effect on our health. How can it happen?
2. What's your advice for the people who spend most of their time using social media?

(1) مخاطر
(2) يرسل رسالة نصية
(3) مشاكل العين
(4) مشاكل الأذن
(5) يدمر/يضر
(6) السمع
(7) تمارين رياضية

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

Pre-reading question:

- Have you ever shopped online? If yes, what did you buy?

Lesson 6

SB page 10

Read the email. What is it about?

Dear Sir/Madam,

I ordered (1) a new mobile phone last week and the delivery (2) was today. When I opened the box, the screen was damaged (3). I would like to change the phone for a new one that is not damaged. Can you tell me how I can do this?

Yours faithfully (4),

Lama Sabri

(1) طلبت (2) توصيل/تسليم

(3) تالفة (4) تفضلوا بقبول فائق الاحترام

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمة التالية:

faithfully /feɪθfʊli/

Post-reading question:

- If you faced the same problem, what would you do?

Lesson 6

WB page 75

Read the email and write the missing sentences a–c in the right places.

Dear Sir/Madam,

I ordered a new game last week on your website. **The delivery was today.** When I opened the box, I found that I ordered a game for children aged 6–9 by mistake. **It did not say this on your website.** I was not happy about this because I want to play the game with my friends, and we are all 13 or 14.

I would like to change the game for a new one that is for the correct age. **Can you tell me how I can do this?**

I look forward to hearing from you.

Yours faithfully,

Haytham Shabana

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering Understanding Applying Analysing Evaluating Creating

Practise more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I would like to ..... the phone for a new one. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) watch b) change c) exercise d) text
2. The screen of my phone was ..... two days ago. I want a new one. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٣
   a) damaged b) aged c) found d) save
3. Social media is very useful, but it has some ....., too. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢
   a) dangers b) information c) ways d) hobbies
4. My friend is sending me a ..... message on my phone. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
   a) text b) street c) picnic d) research
5. Many young people spend much time ..... their social media.
   a) checking b) looking c) playing d) wasting
6. My brother, ... 9, is very active. الغربية ٢٠٢٢
   a) age b) aged c) aging d) ages
7. We can write ..... our ideas in a diary.
   a) down b) in c) on d) at
8. I used to ..... exercise every morning when I was young. الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٣
   a) make b) get c) do d) give
9. Eating fruits and vegetables is good ..... our health.
   a) at b) for c) by d) with
10. My last name is Darahem, which is my family's ..... .
    a) address b) heading c) surname d) title
11. We had a ..... in class about whether homework is necessary or not.
    a) danger b) debate c) screen d) robot
12. In my ....., not all websites are bad. بورسعيد ٢٠٢٣
    a) result b) reason c) opinion d) idea
13. Mountain climbing is the most ..... sport. Many people fall and die. البحيرة ٢٠٢٢
    a) beautiful b) safe c) cheap d) dangerous
14. The city needs to ..... its public transport.
    a) damage b) lose c) miss d) improve
15. ..... online can help us communicate with friends who live far away.
    a) Leaving b) Stopping c) Making d) Going

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

C Skills

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.

Speaking

Talking about positives and negatives of technology

التحدث عن إيجابيات وسلبيات التكنولوجيا

Situation	ما يقال فى هذا الموقف	Response	جملة الرد

online

..... is a good idea. يكون فكرة جيدة.

* "Using technology to help you exercise is a good idea."

From my point of view, ... من وجهة نظرى.

* "From my point of view, too much technology can give you headaches."

It isn't a good idea to + inf. ..... . إنها ليست فكرة جيدة أن.

* "It isn't a good idea to spend too much time watching TV or playing on computers."

In my opinion, ... فى رأيى.

* "In my opinion, all technology is bad for your health."

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialogue:

Sama is asking Ola some questions about computer games. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٢

Sama : Can I ask you some questions?
Ola : (1)..... .
Sama : (2).....?
Ola : In my view, not all computer games are bad.
Sama : (3).....?
Ola : Because some of them can help you to learn things.
Sama : Do you think it is a good idea to play games at night?
Ola : (4)..... .
Sama : Should it be a problem if I only play quiet, calm games in the evening?
Ola : (5)..... .

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Kazem is asking Hameed about the computer and the internet.

Kazem : Hello, Hameed. Do you have a computer?
Hameed : (1)..... . I bought it last week.
Kazem : What do you use it for?
Hameed : (2)..... .
Kazem : (3).....?
Hameed : Yes, I like using the internet. Using it to get lots of information is a good idea.
Kazem : (4).....?
Hameed : In my opinion, it's dangerous to use it too much.
Kazem : What should I do if I want to be safe online?
Hameed : (5)..... .

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I ..... a new mobile phone last week.
   a) ordered b) gave c) saved d) improved
2. We should use ..... language when we meet people for the first time.
   a) impossible b) possible c) formal d) informal
3. We can listen to music ..... headphones to enjoy it without disturbing the others.
   a) through b) by c) from d) on
4. If we talk too loudly, we can ..... someone a headache.
   a) get b) give c) have d) do
5. We can ..... exercises with our friends or family to make it more fun.
   a) stay b) take c) do d) make
6. I made a ..... for my school project and put it on the classroom wall.
   a) poster b) debate c) heading d) letter
7. ..... my opinion, all technology is bad for our health.
   a) In b) On c) At d) By

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

8. If I go out tonight, I ..... to the cinema.
a) going b) will go c) am going d) went

9. I am looking forward ..... my exams. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
a) pass b) to pass c) passing d) to passing

10. If you get lost, you should ..... someone for directions. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
a) asks b) asking c) to ask d) ask

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. If we wait here, we ..... (be) late.
2. ..... (I/should) tell her the truth or should I say nothing?
3. If you ..... (be) ill, you should go to the doctor.
4. We ..... (not/go) to the party if it rains.

4 Write an email of NINETY (90) words to your friend Judy to tell her about how technology is useful. Your name is Sandy and your email address is sandy@yahoo.com. Your friend's email address is judy@gmail.com. دمياط ٢٠٢٢

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Challenging Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب

1. A newspaper article usually has a/an ..... that tells us what the article is about.
a) heading b) address c) surname d) name

2. A: I never have enough money.
B: I don't think you ..... spend money on unimportant things.
a) will b) won't c) should d) shouldn't

3. We use the idiom "See you soon", when we want to ..... an email.
a) begin b) start c) end d) mend

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبدالرحمن عوض

Vocabulary

addicted	مدمن
by mistake	عن طريق الخطأ
change (d)	يغير
check (ed)	يفحص/يراجع
clever jacket	سترة ذكية
damage (d)	يدمر/يضر
danger	خطر
delivery	توصيل/تسليم
disappear (ed)	يختفى
electricity	كهرباء
expert	خبير
explore (d)	يستكشف
headache	صداع
headphones	سماعات الرأس
hearing	السمع
improve (d)	يحسن
invent (ed)	يخترع
lever	رافعة/عتلة/مقبض
model	نموذج
online shopping	التسوق عبر الإنترنت
order	يطلب/يأمر
prefer (red)	يفضل
solar panels	ألواح الطاقة الشمسية
space	الفضاء
take away	يبعد/يسلب
text (ed)	يرسل رسالة نصية
traveller	مسافر
translate (d)	يترجم

Language

The future with "will":

Subject الفاعل + **will ('ll) / won't** + **inf.**

- We will travel to England next week.
- My father will not come late tonight.
- The new bikes will be very useful for travelling.

If/When + subject + present simple, subject + will/won't + inf.

Subject + will/won't + inf. + if/when + subject + present simple

- If everyone shops online, the shops in our towns and cities will close.
- I will do all my shopping online when I am older.

Giving advice:

- You should turn your mobile off while sleeping.
- Children shouldn't eat a lot of sweets.
- If you see people being horrible online, you should tell your parents.

Skills

1 Discussing new inventions:

- Which of the inventions do you think won't be used very much in Egypt? Why not?
- I agree that the jacket won't be very useful in Egypt because the weather is fine.

2 Discussing new technology:

- What types of technology do you use every day?
- I often use my mobile phone, laptop and the headphones.

3 Talking about positives and negatives of technology:

- Using technology to help you exercise is a good idea.
- From my point of view, too much technology can give you headaches.
- It isn't a good idea to spend too much time watching TV or playing on computers.
- If you don't become addicted to technology, you will be fine.
- In my opinion, all technology is bad for your health.
- If you use technology well, it should help you become more healthy.

Question Bank

Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 7

24

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣

1. **A:** What did Lama buy? **B:** She ordered ..... .
   - a) a computer
   - b) a TV
   - c) a laptop
   - d) a mobile
2. She ordered it ..... .
   - a) today
   - b) a week ago
   - c) last month
   - d) yesterday
3. Lama wants to ..... .
   - a) fix it
   - b) make another order
   - c) open it
   - d) change it
4. The ..... was damaged.
   - a) battery
   - b) screen
   - c) charger
   - d) cover

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Wafaa is talking to Rahma about technology.

دمياط ٢٠٢٢

Wafaa : What are you reading about, Rahma?
Rahma : (1)..... .
Wafaa : Technology! Are you interested in it?
Rahma : (2)..... .
Wafaa : (3).....?
Rahma : I think the mobile phone is the most important invention.
Wafaa : But for me, the internet is the most important invention.
Rahma : (4).....?
Wafaa : Because it helps us do researches and get many information.
Rahma : (5)..... .

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions: قنا ٢٠٢٣

It is well known that **modern** technology like computers and smart mobile phones have become part of everyday life. It's common to see that a lot of people are busy using their mobile phones for shopping online, as it saves time and gives them more choices online. Also many people spend hours playing games or watching TV and don't spend enough time exercising and that's one of the dangers of technology. Although computers have made life easier and more comfortable, **they** have bad effects on our lives. Computer addiction can also cause health problems such as bad eye sight and becoming fat. So if you aren't addicted to technology, you will be fine.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the passage?

.....

2. Do you like shopping online? Why/Why not?

.....

3. What does the underlined pronoun "**they**" refer to?

.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Shopping online ..... time and gives more choices.
   a) wastes b) saves c) spends d) kills
5. If you use technology well, it helps you become ..... .
   a) healthy b) unhealthy c) uncomfortable d) bad
6. The word "**modern**" means ..... .
   a) old b) ancient c) big d) new

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We have lots of sun and we could make lots of ..... by using solar panels.
   a) pollution b) electricity c) technology d) rubbish
2. Can you ..... from Arabic to English? المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
   a) translate b) find c) stay d) move
3. The mobile is a very useful ..... . It helps us communicate.
   a) correction b) invention c) translation d) invitation
4. Teenagers are ..... to using social media. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) addicted b) afraid c) horrible d) good

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

5. I ..... to my friend's message yesterday.

a) laughed b) saved c) replied d) replayed

6. Workers have to ..... their skills to get good jobs. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣

a) prove b) communicate c) improve d) connect

7. Listening to too loud music can ..... your hearing. الجيزة ٢٠٢٢

a) damage b) repair c) help d) feed

8. If I pass all my exams, I ..... happy. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٣

a) be b) being c) will be d) been

9. If the weather ....., we won't have a picnic.

a) improve b) improves c) not improve d) doesn't improve

10. You should ..... this project completely before you start the next one.

a) finishes b) finish c) finished d) finishing

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. We ..... (should) make noise at night.
2. When it's so hot, you ..... (will) drink lots of water.
3. If he wants to play the violin, I ..... (buy) one for him.
4. He will come to see us if he ..... (be) able to.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"Modern technology in our life" الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٣

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Assess your progress ★ ★ ★ ★ ★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

Unit 8

You are what you eat

Objectives of the unit

Reading	Texts about what people eat; a healthy food quiz; a recipe; an article about unusual food; an article about a healthy island
Writing	An email about a favourite snack; a paragraph about a country's diet; a paragraph about sleep
Listening	A discussion about favourite snacks; a conversation at dinner; teenagers sharing their worries about food and health
Speaking	Describing food; offering, accepting and refusing food politely; giving advice about being healthy
Language	a lot, a little and a few
Life Skills	Self-management

Tapescript

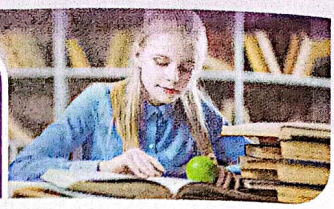
تشير لأسئلة كتاب التدريبات WB تشير لأسئلة كتاب الطالب SB

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

STUDY

Watch a video

Lessons 1 & 2



SB pages 12 - 15 | WB pages 77 & 78

A Vocabulary

- قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيدًا لدرجة الإتقان حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.
- قم باختبار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الذهاب لملحق التقويم وتسميع الكلمات الخاصة بالدرسين.

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

allergic (to) (adj)	لديه حساسية (من)	practice (n)	تدريب
athletics (n)	ألعاب القوى	salt (n)	ملح
energy/ power (n)	طاقة	spices (n)	توابل/بهارات
fast food (n)	طعام سريع	squash (n)	رياضة الإسكواش
fat (n)	دهون	sugar (n)	سكر
netball (n)	كرة الشبكة	taste (d) (v/n)	يتذوق/مذاق
nuts (n)	مكسرات	teenager (n)	مراهق
offer (ed) (v)	يعرض/يقدم	type (n)	نوع

Adjectives صفات

lucky	محظوظ	left	متبقٍّ
common	شائع/منتشر	popular	محبوب/شعبى/شائع
salty	مالح	spicy	متبل/حار
juicy	كثير العصارة		

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

caffeine (n)	مادة الكافيين	oven (n)	فرن
chillies (n)	توابل/فلفل	quiz (n)	اختبار مصغر/مسابقة
curry (n)	كارى (بهار هندى)	research (n)	بحث (دراسة)
dairy products (n)	منتجات ألبان	result (n)	نتيجة
invite (d) (v) (to)	يدعو (إلى)	watermelon (n)	بطيخ
olives (n)	زيتون	wheat (n)	قمح
rice pudding (n)	أرز بلبن (بودنج)	fava beans (n)	حبوب الفول
Okinawa (n)	أوكيناوا	hawawshi (n)	حواوشى

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:

(n) = noun	(adj) = adjective	(prep) = preposition	
(v) = verb	(adv) = adverb	(conj) = conjunction	

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

Check Point

Choose and complete: spices - energy - wheat - results

1. Food gives us ..... to live and work.
2. Every student is waiting for the ..... of the exams.
3. My elder brother likes to put ..... on his food because they are hot.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

do	the washing up	يغسل الأطباق	get	food	يُحضر طعامًا
make	an offer	يقدم عرضًا		ill	يمرض
have	a snack	يتناول وجبة خفيفة			

Prepositions — حروف الجر

example of	مثال على	on the athletics team	فى فريق ألعاب القوى
for breakfast	على وجبة الإفطار	on the way home	فى الطريق إلى البيت

Check Point

Choose and complete: on - got - made

1. He ..... ill after eating polluted food.
2. I met my uncle ..... my way home from school.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر.

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs — تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	P.P.	Present		Past simple	P.P.
choose	يختار	chose	chosen	hurt	يؤذى/ يؤلم	hurt	hurt
give	يعطى	gave	given	put on	يرتدى	put on	put on

Words and Opposites — الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
careful	حريص	careless	مهمل
countable	معدود	uncountable	غير معدود
popular	شعبى/محبوب	unpopular	غير شعبى/غير محبوب

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

1 **It's + adj. + to + inf.** إنه من ..... أن .....

- It is easy to make hawawshi.

2 **try to + inf.** يحاول أن

try not to + inf. يحاول ألا

- I tried to **open** the door, but I couldn't.
- I try not to **eat** too much.

3 **make + مفعول + (adj./inf.)** يجعل

- The teacher made the pupils laugh/happy.

4 **Unusual snacks** وجبات غير عادية

Snack	What it is	Features	Country
chips رقائق بطاطس محمرة/شيبسي	buy from a fish and chip shop	not healthy	Britain
falafel طعمية	made from fava beans	delicious / popular	Egypt
rojak روجاك/سلطة خضار وفواكه	a fruit snack/ buy on the street	sweet and juicy/ delicious	Malaysia
samosa سمبوسة	buy on the street	spicy vegetables	India
sfenj الإسفنج (كعكة مقلية محلاة)	a kind of cake	has lots of sugar and fat/ sweet/ not healthy	Morocco

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Try ..... make noise when you go upstairs.
   a) for not **b)** for **c)** to **d)** not to
2. It's possible ..... your own small project.
   a) to do **b)** doing **c)** to doing **d)** do
3. Rojak is a popular snack in Malaysia. It's a ..... fruit snack.
   a) juice **b)** juicy **c)** salt **d)** sweets

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Definitions — التعريفات

allergic	لديه حساسية	getting ill when you eat or touch something
delicious	لذيذ	very nice to eat
energy	طاقة	something that gives you the power to do things
fast food	طعام سريع	food that is quick and easy to buy or cook

Words and Synonyms — الكلمات ومرادفها

Word — الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning) — مرادفها
careful — حريص	cautious — حريص

Suffix اللاحقة

Word — الكلمة	Suffix — اللاحقة	Function — الوظيفة	The new word — الكلمة الجديدة
juice (n) — عصير	-y	تحويل الاسم لصفة	juicy (adj) — كثير العصارة
salt (n) — ملح			salty (adj) — مالح

هذا الجزء يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المتشابهة فى الهجاء ولكن مختلفة فى المعنى.

Similar Spelling - Different Meaning

Word — الكلمة	Similar word — الكلمة المشابهة
chips — رقائق بطاطس/شيبسى	ships — سفن
curry — كارى (بهار هندى)	carry — يحمل
dairy — ألبان	diary — مفكرة
left — متبقٍّ	lift — يرفع
spices — توابل/بهارات	species — أنواع/أصناف
sweet — حلو	sweat — يعرق
taste — يتذوق/ مذاق	test — امتحان/ اختبار

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

B Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-listening question: - What's the most popular dish in Egypt?

Lesson 1

Listen and put the snacks from page 12 in the order that you hear them. Were your answers to the quiz correct?

SB page 13

Speaker 1 Sfenj(1) is a kind of cake from Morocco. It has lots of sugar and fat in it and is very sweet, so it is not very healthy, but I love it! We sometimes eat sfenj for breakfast and sometimes as a snack(2) with some tea or a cup of coffee.

Speaker 2 In many places, people use fava beans(3) to make falafel. They are the best! Falafel is really delicious(4) and it is very popular(5) in Egypt.

Speaker 3 In Britain, we often buy chips from a fish and chip shop(6). People often put some salt on their chips. I don't put any salt on mine because I don't like salty(7) food. It is not very healthy.

Speaker 4 You can buy samosas(8) on the street everywhere in India. Samosas have spicy(9) vegetables inside them. People often eat samosas for a snack. I love to eat them with some hot tea.

Speaker 5 Rojak(10) is a fruit snack you can buy in the street in Malaysia and people also make it at home. Rojak is very sweet(11) and juicy(12). People use different spices(13) in different parts of the country, but it's always delicious.

(1) كيكة الإسفنج (2) وجبة خفيفة (3) الفول
(4) لذيذ (5) محبوب/شعبى (6) متجر الرقائق
(7) مملح (8) سمبوسة (9) متبل
(10) روجاك (11) حلو (12) كثير العصير
(13) توابل

Note:

Morocco /məˈrɒkəʊ/
samosa /səməʊsə/
delicious /dɪlɪʃəs/
spices /spaɪs/

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:
Britain /ˈbrɪtən/

Post-listening question: - Which snack would you like to try? Why?

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

Lesson 1

WB page 77

Complete the email with some or any.

Hi Tom,

How are you? Thanks for your last email. You asked me to describe my favourite snack(1). I love hawawshi and I often have it when I get home from school. It is easy to make. First, you need **some** nice bread. Then you put **some** meat and vegetables inside the bread. You can put **some** salt(2) on it, too. I don't like to have **any** salt, though, because it is not very healthy. Now you cook it in the oven. It is delicious(3)! Do you have **any** favourite snacks? Describe them to me in your next email!

(1) وجبة خفيفة (2) ملح (3) لذيذ

Best wishes,
Osama

Lesson 2

SB page 15

Listen to Amal and Huda talking to their grandmother and answer the questions.

Grandmother	Would you like some more chicken, Amal?
Amal	Yes, please, just a little.
Grandmother	And would you like some more beans, too?
Amal	Yes, thank you, grandmother … stop, that's enough! I mustn't eat too much.
Huda	Do you like chicken, Amal?
Amal	Yes, I love Grandmother's spicy chicken. It's the best!
Huda	Thank you, Grandmother, that was a delicious dinner!
Grandmother	Would you girls like some more rice pudding?
Huda	No, thank you, I'm really full.
Grandmother	What about you, Amal?
Amal	Thank you, but I really couldn't. Why don't you have a rest now, Grandmother? Huda and I can take the plates to the kitchen and we'll do the washing up.

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

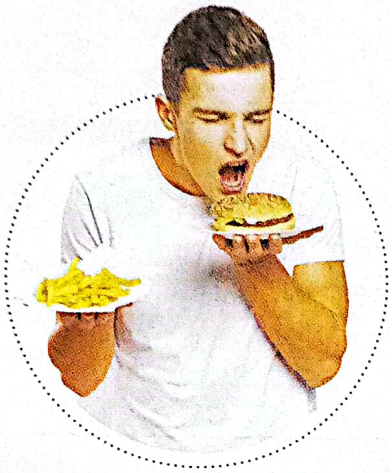
Pre-reading question:

- What kinds of food are you allergic to?

Read the texts about two teenagers (1) and answer the questions.

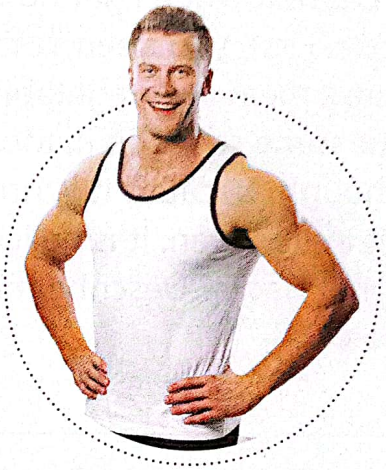
SB page 14

What I eat



My name's Imad. I am allergic to (2) nuts, so I must be careful what I eat. If I eat something with nuts (3) in it, I will get ill! For most of the time, this is not a problem. However, I like sweet things, and there are a few types (4) of cake that have nuts in them, so I can't eat those.

I'm lucky (5) because my mother makes me many different, delicious things to eat at home. She says I should eat more vegetables and salad. I have a lot of fruit, and that's healthy!



I'm Mustafa. I'm on the school athletics team (6) and I go running every day, so I need food that gives me energy (7).

I eat a lot of rice and pasta every day. I also eat a few healthy snacks, like nuts.

After athletics practice (8), my friends and I sometimes get some fast food, like pizzas, on the way home, but I try not to eat too much!

(1) مراهقين	(2) لديه حساسية من	(3) مكسرات
(4) أنواع	(5) محظوظ	(6) فريق ألعاب القوى
(7) طاقة	(8) تدريب ألعاب القوى	

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

allergic /əlɜːʳdʒɪk/ athletics /æθletɪks/

Post-reading questions:

1. What should and shouldn't you eat a lot of? Why?
2. What's Imad's problem with the sweet things?
3. What's your advice for those who eat a lot of fast food?

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

Pre-reading question:

- What should we do to be healthy?

Circle the correct words.

WB page 78

Judy plays squash (1) every week and needs to be healthy, so what does she eat? She is allergic to nuts, so she doesn't eat **any** cakes because they sometimes have nuts in them. She eats **a lot of** fish because it helps to make her strong. A few hours before a netball game, she always eats some fish with **a lot of** pasta, because this gives her energy. When she is playing netball (2), she drinks **a little** water. Then, after the game, she eats **a few** sweets. She does not have many because she knows they are not very good for her.

(1) الإسكواش (2) كرة الشبكة

Post-reading questions:

1. Why does Judy eat a lot of fish?
2. Does she eat many sweets? Why/Why not?

Listen and check your answers to Exercise 5, then role-play the dialogue.

WB page 78

Grandma Would you like some cake, Leila?

Leila Yes, please, just a little. I mustn't eat too much.

Grandma Would you like a cup of tea with the cake?

Leila Thank you, I like tea.

Grandma Do you like sugar in your tea?

Leila Yes, please, but that's enough. I only like a little sugar.

Grandma Here you are, tea with cake!

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering Understanding Applying Analysing Evaluating Creating

Practise more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. ..... are boys or girls from thirteen to nineteen. قنا ٢٠٢٣
   a) Babies b) Teenagers c) Volunteers d) Adults
2. ..... is something that gives you the power to do things. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣
   a) Plan b) Offer c) Problem d) Energy
3. It was not easy for him to join the school ..... team. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) athletics b) allergic c) athlete d) tests
4. ..... products like milk make our body strong. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) Daily b) Dairy c) Diary d) Little
5. Tamer is ..... to fish, so he doesn't eat it. سوهاج ٢٠٢٣
   a) interested b) usual c) allergic d) addicted
6. I like eating ..... fruits like watermelons and oranges. المنيا ٢٠٢٣
   a) spicy b) salty c) tasteless d) juicy
7. Some people like to listen to music ..... the way home.
   a) at b) on c) in d) of
8. Rojak is a fruit ..... you can buy in the street in Malaysia.
   a) snack b) caffeine c) oven d) quiz
9. ..... can be green or black, and have a salty taste.
   a) Beans b) Watermelons c) Olives d) Nuts
10. How about ..... Khalid to the party? القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
    a) inventing b) offering c) getting d) inviting
11. I ..... to help him, but he said he could do it alone.
    a) offered b) made c) refused d) let
12. To learn a language well, you must have a lot of ..... .
    a) advise b) advice c) practise d) practice
13. Coffee and tea contain ....., which could make you stay awake.
    a) salt b) caffeine c) protein d) honey
14. We cook chicken in the ..... . بني سويف ٢٠٢٣
    a) over b) oven c) offer d) often
15. "....." means "to have a strong taste from spices". القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
    a) Juicy b) Fatty c) Spicy d) Terrible
16. "....." means very nice to eat. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
    a) Sour b) Dirty c) Delicious d) Unhealthy

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

Language

1 Countable and uncountable nouns الأسماء المعدودة/ غير المعدودة

Countable nouns

الأسماء المعدودة

- وهى الأسماء التى لها مفرد وجمع.

book - car - man - boy - table - chair ➤➤ books - cars - men - boys - tables - chairs

Uncountable nouns

الأسماء غير المعدودة

- وهى الأسماء التى لا يمكن جمعها وتبقى مفردًا دائمًا (الكمية).

water - rice - salt - sugar - information

a/ an

- تستخدم (a/an) مع الاسم المعدود فى حالة المفرد.
- (an) مع الاسم المعدود المفرد الذى يبدأ بصوت متحرك (a - e - i - o - u)
  - Mum, I want **an egg**, please.
  - There's **an orange** on the table.
- (a) مع الاسم المعدود المفرد الذى يبدأ بصوت ساكن (باقى الحروف).
  - My father bought **a new** car yesterday.
  - I don't want **a cheese** sandwich.

some & any

some:

- (some) (بعض) تأتى مع الاسم الجمع والاسم غير المعدود (كمية) فى حالة الإثبات.
  - I saw **some boys** playing in the street.
  - People often put **some salt** on their chips.

لاحظ

- تستخدم (some) مع حالة العرض أو الطلب.
  - Can you give me **some water**? (طلب)
  - Would you like **some juice**? (عرض)

any:

- (any) (أى) تأتى مع الاسم الجمع والاسم غير المعدود (كمية) فى حالة السؤال والنفى.
  - I don't put **any salt** on hawawshi.
  - Do you have **any oranges**?

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

تمكنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال
تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Got it ?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 Do you have ..... (some) types of cake?

-الإجابة الصحيحة (any) لأنها صيغة سؤال وtypes اسم جمع.

2 There is ..... (a) orange in the fridge.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (an) لأن orange اسم مفرد يعد ويبدأ بصوت متحرك.

3 There are ..... (any) cats in the garden.

-الإجابة الصحيحة (some) لأن الجملة مثبتة وcats اسم جمع.

a lot of/ many/ much

a lot of = lots of:

- (a lot of/lots of) (كثير من) وهى تأتى مع الاسم الجمع والاسم غير المعدود (كمية) غالبًا فى حالة الإثبات.

- I have **a lot of fruit**.
- I eat **a lot of rice** and **pasta**.
- I invited **a lot of friends** to my birthday party.

many:

- ويمكن استخدام (many) (كثير للجمع) مع الاسم الجمع فقط غالبًا فى السؤال والنفى.

- I don't eat **many snacks**.
- Do you have **many pens**?

much:

- ويمكن استخدام (much) (كثير للكمية) مع الاسم غير المعدود (كمية) فقط غالبًا فى السؤال والنفى.

- I don't eat **much salad**.
- Does mum need **much wheat**?

تمكنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال
تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Got it ?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 Do you think .....(much) people will come to the party?

- الإجابة الصحيحة (many) لأن people اسم جمع.

2 I went shopping and spent .....(lot) of money.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (a lot/lots) لوجود of.

a few/ a little

a few:

- (a few) (قليل للجمع) تأتى مع الاسم الجمع فقط غالبًا فى الإثبات.

- There are **a few oranges** in the fridge.
- Habiba has **a few friends**.

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

a little:

- (a little) (قليل للكمية) تأتى مع الاسم غير المعدود (كمية) فقط غالبًا فى الإثبات.
- My sister prefers **a little** salt in her food.
- There is **a little** sugar in my tea.

Got it ?

تمكنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Complete the sentence with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- My little brother sometimes eats a ..... (little) nuts for breakfast.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (few) لأن nuts اسم جمع.

2 like/would like يحب/يود

A like: We use (like) to talk about what we prefer.

- نستخدم (like) للتحدث عما نفضله.

Subject + like/likes + n./v.ing/to + inf. (يحب)

- I like **orange juice**.
- I don't like **tea**.
- I like **to have** eggs for breakfast.
- My sister likes **watching** cartoons.

Do/Does + subject + like + n./v.ing/to + inf. ...? هل يحب ...؟

- **Do** you **like coffee/drinking** coffee?
- **Does** your sister **like to play** squash?

B would like: We use (would like) to make offers and ask for things.

- نستخدم (would like) لتقديم العروض وطلب الأشياء.

Subject + would ('d) like + n./to + inf. (يود/يريد أن)

- **I'd like some beans**, please.
- **I'd like to have** some juice.

Would + subject + like + n./to + inf. ...? هل يود/هل يريد أن ...؟

- **Would** you **like a sandwich**?
- **Would** you **like** to **have** some tea?

تمكنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Got it ?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. My cousin ..... (would like) reading adventure stories.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (likes) لأن المعنى يحب ويوجد v.ing (reading).

2. ..... (Will) you like to have some salad?

- الإجابة الصحيحة (Would) لأنها تقديم عرض.

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

PRACTICE

Language Exercises

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. There are ..... expensive new flats next to the river. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٣
   a) an b) a c) any d) some
2. Maha doesn't have many friends. She only has ..... friends. المنوفية ٢٠٢٢
   a) many b) a few c) any d) a little
3. Where would you like .....? الدقهلية ٢٠٢٢
   a) go b) going c) to go d) goes
4. Don't eat ..... of sweets because they're not healthy. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢
   a) some b) a little c) a lot d) a few
5. Add ..... salt to the chips, but not too much. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣
   a) many b) much c) a few d) a little
6. There's ..... pasta left in the cupboard. Shall we eat it tonight? بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣
   a) lot b) many c) a little d) a few
7. I don't like this soup. There is ..... of salt in it. سوهاج ٢٠٢٣
   a) lots b) many c) enough d) few
8. Would you like ..... more chicken, Amal? أزهر - القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) some b) an c) few d) little
9. There is ..... juice in the glass. سوهاج ٢٠٢٣
   a) a few b) lot c) a little d) any
10. Noha ..... to walk to the club with her friends.
    a) would like b) like c) don't like d) not like

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. There is ..... (any) rice in the fridge. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٣
2. She didn't read ..... (some) books last week. القليوبية ٢٠٢٢
3. Would you like ..... (any) cup of coffee? الفيوم ٢٠٢٣
4. She likes ..... (a few) milk in her tea, but not very much. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
5. Would you like to have ..... (any) juice? سوهاج ٢٠٢٣
6. There ..... (aren't) any sugar in my tea. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من
حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.

1. Speaking

1. Discussing food

مناقشة الطعام

Situation	ما يقال فى هذا الموقف	Response	جملة الرد

online

What's your favourite juicy fruit that you like to eat when you're thirsty?

ما الفاكهة كثيرة العصارة التى تفضل تناولها عندما تكون عطشان؟

I like oranges and pineapples. أحب البرتقال والأناناس.

What can you do if you eat something that is very hot and spicy and it hurts your mouth?

ماذا يمكنك أن تفعل عند تناول شىء حار جدًا أو متبل أدى إلى ألم فى فمك؟

I can eat vegetables. يمكننى تناول الخضراوات.

The water in the sea is salty. Can you think of a food with this taste?

مياه البحر مالحة. هل يمكنك التفكير فى طعام بنفس المذاق؟

I think fish is salty, too. أعتقد أن السمك مملح أيضًا.

If we don't want to use sugar to make food sweet, what other things can we use?

إذا كنا لا نريد استخدام السكر لتحلية الطعام، فما الأشياء الأخرى التى يمكننا أن نستخدمها؟

I think we can use honey. أعتقد أنه يمكننا استخدام العسل.

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

2. Offering, Accepting and Refusing food

عرض وقبول ورفض الطعام

Situation	ما يقال فى هذا الموقف	Response	جملة الرد

online

Would you like a sandwich?	هل تود ساندوتش؟
Thank you, but I'm really full.	شكرًا، ولكنى حقًا ممتلئ.
Would you like some grapes?	هل تود بعض العنب؟
Yes, please.	نعم، من فضلك.
Do you like coffee?	هل تحب القهوة؟
No, I don't. I prefer tea.	لا. أنا افضل الشاى.
Do you like a little salt on your chips?	هل تحب القليل من الملح على الشيبسى؟
No, thank you.	لا، شكرًا.

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialogue:

Amal is talking to Soha about food. القليوبية ٢٠٢٣

Amal : Can I ask you some questions about food?
Soha : (1)..... .
Amal : What is your favourite food?
Soha : (2)..... .
Amal : Why do you like fish?
Soha : (3)..... .
Amal : (4).....?
Soha : We need energy to be able to do many things.
Amal : (5).....?
Soha : We should eat healthy food to keep healthy.

Check Point

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

2. Write it right

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.

How to write about your favourite meal

كيفية الكتابة عن وجبتك المفضلة

- I love (اسم الأكلة).
- I often have it for (breakfast/lunch/dinner) with (مع من تتناولها).
- It's (وصف المذاق). It's delicious.
- My mum always cooks it for us, but it is easy to make.
- You need (اذكر المكونات الأساسية).
- You can put (ما يمكنك إضافته عليها).
- I always eat it with salad because I like healthy food.
- It helps us to stay strong.

Writing tips

Make sure that you have complete sentences, correct spelling, and necessary capitalisation and punctuation.

بعد الانتهاء من كتابة الفقرة ، تأكد من أن:

- كل الجمل مكتملة وذات معنى.
- الكلمات مكتوبة بتهجئة صحيحة.
- علامات الترقيم صحيحة.

Example

To : reem@yahoo.com
From : rawda@yahoo.com
Subject : My favourite snack

Dear Reem,

Greetings! How are you and your family? I hope you are in good health. I'm very happy to write this email to you. Thanks for your last email. You asked me to describe my favourite snack. I love samosas. I often have it for dinner with my family. It's spicy. It is delicious. It is easy to make. You need meat, onions and peas. You can add cheese, too. I always eat it with salad because I like healthy food. It helps us to stay strong. Have you tried it before? I'm looking forward to seeing you. Best wishes.

Yours,
Rawda

Check Point

Write an email of about NINETY (90) words to your friend Susan to tell her about the last meal you cooked. Your name is Maria and your email address is maria@student.com. Your friend's email address is susan@student.com.

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

دمياط ٢٠٢٢
نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

1. Ahmed is on the school ..... team.
   a) running b) football c) athletics d) swimming
2. When does Ahmed go running?
   a) In the morning. b) In the afternoon.
   c) At night. d) At the weekend.
3. Ahmed eats good food to give him ..... .
   a) athletics b) team c) running d) energy
4. Ahmed eats ..... for lunch.
   a) chicken b) fish c) meat d) oranges

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Hoda and Lamees are talking about food.

الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٣

Hoda : Do you like food?
Lamees : (1)..... .
Hoda : (2).....?
Lamees : I like rice and pasta.
Hoda : (3).....?
Lamees : Because they give me energy.
Hoda : Are you allergic to any kind of food?
Lamees : (4)..... .
Hoda : What foods are you allergic to?
Lamees : (5)..... .

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My brother is ..... to spicy food, so he must be careful about what he eats.

القاهرة ٢٠٢٣

   a) healthy b) diary c) amazed d) allergic
2. Everyone should have food that ..... them energy.

دمياط ٢٠٢٣

   a) takes b) makes c) gets d) gives
3. You must be careful when you cross the street. The opposite of "careful" is ..... .
   a) safe b) cautious c) careless d) dangerous
4. ..... is an example of fast food.

القليوبية ٢٠٢٣

   a) Pizza b) Pasta c) Cheese d) Cake
5. Falafel is one of the most ..... foods in Egypt. Many people like eating it. القليوبية ٢٠٢٣
   a) popular b) easy c) unhealthy d) unpopular

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

6. Sara is ..... the school athletics team. دمياط ٢٠٢٢
a) for b) in c) on d) at

7. We ..... food with our tongue.
a) see b) hear c) smell d) taste القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

8. What would you like .....?
a) have b) having c) to have d) has

9. Sama spends ..... time watching TV. It is bad for her eyes. البحيرة ٢٠٢٢
a) lot b) little c) many d) much

10. Samy is not very hungry, so he only wants ..... rice. سوهاج ٢٠٢٣
a) a few b) a little c) a lot of d) many

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. ..... (you/like) some more juice? القليوبية ٢٠٢٣
2. Are there any new ..... (student) this year?
3. We drink ..... (a few) water in summer. دمياط ٢٠٢٣
4. They like ..... (a little) olives on the pizza. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣

5 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"Healthy food" بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Challenging Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

1. I asked my mum if we could ..... food from my favourite restaurant for dinner tonight.
a) give b) pay c) sell d) get

2. She told me ..... information about the history of her family.
a) a b) an c) some d) any

3. I need to buy ..... new pair of shoes.
a) a b) an c) much d) many

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

STUDY

Watch a video

Lessons 3 & 4

SB pages 16 - 18 | WB pages 79 & 80

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

add (ed) (to) (v)	يضيف (إلى)	fried (adj)	مقلى
boiled (adj)	مسلوق	frying pan (n)	قدر القلى
bones (n)	عظام	humans (n)	البشر
chopped (adj)	مُقَطّع	instructions (n)	تعليمات
dry (adj)	جاف	protein (n)	بروتين
fat (n)	دهون	recipe (n)	وصفة طعام
fresh (adj)	طازج		

Cooking verbs أفعال الطهى

beat (with)	يخفق (بيض/زبدة) بـ	heat (ed)	يُسَخِّن
boil (ed)	يغلى/يسلق	pour (ed) (into)	يصب (فى)
chop (ped) (into)	يقطع (إلى)	serve (d)	يقدم طعامًا/يخدم
fry (ied)	يقلى		

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

bowl (n)	سلطانية	fesikh (n)	فسيخ
butter (n)	زبدة	fork (n)	شوكة
call (ed) (v)	يسمى	knife (n)	سكين
century eggs (n)	بيض القرن المحفوظ (أكلة صينية)	oil (n)	زيت
champorado (n)	عصيدة أرز الشوكولاتة الحلوة	omelette (n)	أُمليت/عجة البيض
chocolate (n)	شوكولاتة	onion (n)	بصلة
diagram (n)	رسم تخطيطى/توضيحى	salty fish (n)	سمك مملح
dining room (n)	حجرة الطعام	soup (n)	حساء/شوربة
discuss (ed) (v)	يناقش	square (n)	مربع
dry fish (n)	سمك جاف	sweet chocolate rice (n)	أرز الشوكولاتة الحلو
durian fruit (n)	فاكهة دوريان	tuyo (n)	(تويو) نوع سمك

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

ages 79 & 80

المفردات

مقلى
قدر القلى
البشر
تعليمات
بروتين
وصفة طع

يُستخْن
يصب (فى
يقدم طع

المفردات

فسيخ
شوكة
سكين
زيت
أمليت/عج
بصلة
سمك مم
حساء/شو
مربع
أرز الشوك
(توبو) نو

Check Point

Choose and complete: boil - serve - boiled - protein

1. I usually help my mum to ..... the food on the table.
2. We need to eat ..... to have a healthy body.
3. My little brothers usually eat ..... eggs for breakfast.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Prepositions — حروف الجر

on the internet	على الإنترنت	take out of	يُخرج من
on the outside	من الخارج	under the ground	تحت الأرض

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs — تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	P.P.	Present	Past simple	P.P.
beat with يخفق بـ	beat	beaten	keep يحفظ	kept	kept
grow ينمو/يزرع	grew	grown	smell يشم	smelt	smelt

Words and Opposites — الكلمات وعكسها

Word — الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym) — عكسها
difficult صعب	easy سهل
expensive غالٍ	cheap رخيص
hard صلب	soft لين
normal عادى	abnormal غير عادى
strong قوى	weak ضعيف
usual معتاد	unusual غير معتاد

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

1 **smell/taste/look + adj.** — يشم/يتذوق/يبدو

- Century eggs smell bad.
- "Champorado" with "tuyo" looks unusual.
- Durian fruits are very healthy and taste delicious.

2

Sense الحاسة	see يرى	hear يسمع	touch يلمس	taste يتذوق	smell يشم
Part جزء الجسم	eyes العينان	ears الأذنان	fingers أصابع اليد	tongue اللسان	nose الأنف

- We hear with our **ears**.
- We touch with our **fingers**.

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

3 Countries & cities — بلاد ومدن

China	الصين	the Philippines	الفلبين
Indonesia	إندونيسيا		

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Words and Synonyms — الكلمات ومرادفها

Word — الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning) — مرادفها
difficult — صعب	hard — صعب
expensive — غالٍ	costly — غالٍ

Suffix اللاحقة

Word — الكلمة	Suffix — اللاحقة	Function — الوظيفة	The new word — الكلمة الجديدة
instruct (v) — يأمر	-ion	تحويل الفعل لاسم	instruction (n) — أمر/تعليمات

Similar Spelling - Different Meaning

هذا الجزء يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المتشابهة فى الهجاء ولكن مختلفة فى المعنى.

Word — الكلمة	Similar word — الكلمة المشابهة
butter — زبدة	better — أفضل
chop — يقطع	shop — محل
try — يحاول/يجرب	dry — جاف

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

B Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-reading question: - Do you think your eating habits are healthy?

Lesson 3

SB page 16

Complete the quiz:

A healthy food quiz

1. If you want to be healthy, you should eat ..... .
   a) only fruit and vegetables b) a lot of meat and cheese
   c) some of all types of food
2. We need to drink ..... glasses of water every day.
   a) eight b) two c) four
3. Dairy products (1) like milk and cheese help us to ..... .
   a) have lots of hair b) have strong bones (2) c) run fast
4. Meat, cheese and nuts have protein (3) in them and we need protein to ..... .
   a) sleep well b) move fast c) have a strong body (4)
5. A lot of sugar ..... .
   a) makes it difficult to sleep b) is bad for your teeth
   c) makes you sleep longer
6. Examples of healthy snacks are ..... .
   a) fruit and nuts b) chocolate and sweets c) salty chips
7. People need to eat ..... pieces of fresh fruit and vegetables every day.
   a) one to two b) five to ten c) one
8. People often like fast food because ..... .
   a) it has lots of fat and sugar in it b) it gives you energy
   c) you can eat a lot of it and not feel full
9. Food is usually healthy and good for you when it is ..... .
   a) expensive b) fresh (5) c) from a big supermarket

(1) منتجات الألبان
(2) عظام قوية
(3) بروتين
(4) جسم قوى
(5) طازج

Answers:

One point for each correct answer:
(1) c (2) a (3) b (4) c (5) b (6) a (7) b (8) a (9) b

Score 7–9: Very good! You know all about healthy eating.
Score 4–6: Quite good. You need to learn a little more to be really healthy!
Score 1–3: Not good. There are a lot of things you need to learn about healthy eating.

Post-reading question: - How do we build healthy eating habits?

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

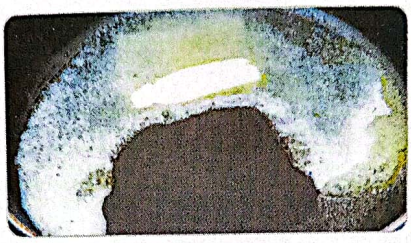
Pre-reading question:

- What was the last meal you cooked?

Complete the recipes (1) for an omelette and tomato salad with these instructions.

SB page 17

beat



heat

fry

chop

pour

serve

How to make an omelette (2)

1. Beat (4) two eggs in a bowl with little milk.
2. Add (5) a little salt to the eggs and milk.
3. Heat (6) some butter in a frying pan (7).
4. Pour (8) the eggs into the frying pan and cook them in the butter.
5. When the omelette is ready, take it out of the frying pan and serve (9) with salad.

How to make a tomato salad (3)

1. Take two big tomatoes and half an onion.
2. Chop (10) all the vegetables into small squares.
3. Put the chopped vegetables (11) into a bowl.
4. Add a little oil, salt and lemon juice.
5. Serve the salad with your omelette.

Post-reading question:

- Was the recipe above useful for you? Why?

(1) وصفات الطعام/طريقة التحضير	(2) أومليت/عجة البيض	(3) سلطة طماطم
(4) يخفق	(5) يضيف	(6) يسخن
(7) قدر القلى	(8) يصب	(9) يقدم طعامًا/يخدم
(10) يقطع	(11) الخضار المقطع	

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

Lesson 3

Pre-reading question:

- When do you usually eat foul mudammas?

Circle the correct words in the recipe.

WB page 79

How to make foul mudammas

1. **Wash** some beans and put them in a pan.
2. **Add** some water and salt to the beans.
3. **Heat** the beans in the water until it boils.
4. **Pour** some lemon juice over the hot beans.
5. **Serve** it with warm bread.

Post-reading question:

- How can we make foul mudammas?

Lesson 4

Pre-listening question:

- What kinds of food do you like?

Listen to four people talking about food. Are these sentences true (T) or false (F)? Correct the false sentences.

WB page 80

Ashraf I'm Ashraf. I really like trying unusual food because I like to taste new things.

Dina My name's Dina. When I was younger, I thought vegetables didn't taste nice at all. Now I like them. I eat a lot of them because I know they are healthy.

Heba I'm Heba. Yesterday I ate fesikh. This is a dry salty fish. It doesn't taste nice at all, and it smells horrible!

Basel My name's Basel. I love the smell of cakes when they are cooking, but I never eat cakes at all. I'm allergic to nuts.

Post-listening question:

- What's fesikh?

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

Pre-reading question:

- What unusual food or drink have you tried? What was it like?

Read about some unusual food. Which would or wouldn't you like to try? Why?

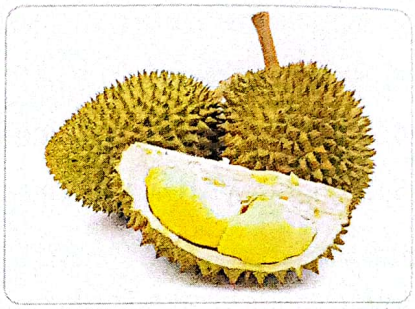
SB page 18

Unusual[1] but delicious[2]

Some food smells[3] bad or looks unusual – but still tastes good!

'Durian fruits'[4] grow in Indonesia and Malaysia.

Some fruits can be 30 centimetres long. They are hard and green on the outside, but soft and yellow on the inside. Some people don't want to eat them because they smell terrible[5], but they are very healthy and taste delicious. People use durian fruits to make juice, ice creams and soup.



In the Philippines, people eat something called 'champorado'[6] with 'tuyo'[7] for breakfast. 'Champorado' is sweet chocolate rice and 'tuyo' are small salty fish.

For most people, it's unusual to eat sweet and salty things together, but it is popular in the Philippines! In China, people eat eggs that are months or years old! They are called century eggs and they are black and green inside. To make them, people put fresh eggs under the ground for a long time. Century eggs smell a lot and have a salty taste, but lots of people think they are delicious.

(1) غير معتاد (2) لذيذ

(3) ذو (يصدر) رائحة (4) فاكهة دوريان

(5) فظيع/سيئ جدًا (6) عصيدة أرز الشوكولاتة الحلوة

(7) تويو (سمك)

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

durian /ˈdjʊərɪən/ Philippines /ˈfɪlɪˌpiːnz/

Post-reading question:

- In which two ways are century eggs different from normal eggs?

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Can you ..... some hot water into my cup?
   a) wash **b)** pour **c)** clean **d)** beat — المنيا ٢٠٢٣
2. When you ..... ice, it melts.
   a) heat **b)** pull **c)** beat **d)** pour — الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
3. My mother's food ..... delicious. I like it very much.
   a) tastes **b)** feels **c)** hears **d)** touches
4. Meat, fish and eggs all have ..... in them.
   a) sugar **b)** salt **c)** bones **d)** protein — سوهاج ٢٠٢٣
5. Please, ... the carrots into small pieces.
   a) add **b)** beat **c)** chop **d)** boil — قنا ٢٠٢٣
6. To make foul mudammas, my mother ..... some beans and put them in a pan.
   a) washes **b)** sells **c)** serves **d)** adds — الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
7. To be healthy, you have to ..... well.
   a) sleep **b)** play **c)** study **d)** fry — الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٣
8. In restaurants, waiters usually ..... the food for customers.
   a) serve **b)** pour **c)** try **d)** fry — الغربية ٢٠٢٣
9. We need to ..... the rules for the game.
   a) discuss **b)** beat **c)** grow **d)** smell
10. Most people like to eat pasta with a ..... .
    a) fork **b)** knife **c)** pan **d)** bowl
11. To make an omelette, ... eggs in a bowl.
    a) heat **b)** pour **c)** beat **d)** chop — الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٣
12. I used a ..... to learn the different parts of man.
    a) diagram **b)** soup **c)** pan **d)** knife
13. We ..... our food cool in the fridge.
    a) keep **b)** pour **c)** add **d)** chop
14. I don't like ..... eggs because they smell bad.
    a) fresh **b)** century **c)** year **d)** month — الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
15. For this ....., you need the juice of two lemons.
    a) script **b)** recipe **c)** menu **d)** list — المنوفية ٢٠٢٢
16. You should always read the ..... on medicine before you take it.
    a) orders **b)** instructions **c)** offers **d)** recipes

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

C Language

Imperatives صيغة الأمر

- تبدأ جملة الأمر بالفعل فى المصدر ولا يوجد فاعل للجملة.
  - **Chop** the tomatoes!
  - **Beat** two eggs in a bowl with little milk.
- ويمكن وضع كلمة (**please**) (من فضلك) وأيضًا المخاطب فى أول الجملة أو آخرها.
  - **Open** the door, please.
  - Ali, **boil** the eggs.
- ينفى الأمر بكلمة (**Don't**) ثم الفعل فى المصدر.
  - **Don't** chop the vegetables too small!
  - **Don't** add too much salt!

PRACTICE — Language Exercises

Practise more

Remembering Understanding Applying Analysing Evaluating Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. ..... drink fizzy drinks. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) Isn't **b)** Don't **c)** Doesn't **d)** Didn't
2. Take the omelette and ..... it with salad. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) serving **b)** serves **c)** serve **d)** doesn't serve
3. Don't ..... your time playing video games.
   a) wasting **b)** wastes **c)** wasted **d)** waste
4. ..... all the vegetables into small squares. أزهر - القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) Chopping **b)** Chopped **c)** Chop **d)** Chops
5. Listen to your parents and ..... their advice.
   a) don't follow **b)** follow **c)** doesn't follow **d)** follows
6. ..... make noise at the library. الغربية ٢٠٢٣
   a) Doesn't **b)** Don't **c)** Didn't **d)** Aren't

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Please, ... (brings) me a glass of water.
2. ..... (Turns) the lights off before you sleep. الغربية ٢٠٢٢
3. Don't ..... (boiling) eggs more than one time. المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
4. Please, ... (adding) some olive oil to salad. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
5. ..... (Play) with knives. They'll hurt you.
6. Don't ..... (forgot) to tidy up your room. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٣

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

D Skills

Write it right

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.

1. How to write about your favourite recipe

كيفية الكتابة عن وصفة الطعام المفضلة

- I always help my mum in the kitchen.
- She always teaches me to make (أنواع الطعام).
- I like to make (اسم الأكلة).
- Firstly, (الخطوة الأولى لصنع الأكلة).
- Then, add (الإضافات). - Finally, (الخطوة الأخيرة).

Writing tips

A good paragraph is composed of a topic sentence (or key sentence), relevant supporting sentences, and a closing sentence.

تتكون الفقرة الجيدة من الجملة الافتتاحية والجمل المترابطة الداعمة والجملة الختامية.

Example

My favourite recipe

I always help my mum in the kitchen. She always teaches me how to make different kinds of food. She gives me easy and clear instructions and I always remember them. I like to make omelettes. Firstly, beat two eggs in a bowl with a little milk. Then, add a little salt to the eggs and milk. Heat some butter in a frying pan. After that, pour the eggs into the frying pan and cook them in the butter. Finally, when the omelette is ready, take it out of the frying pan and serve with salad.

2. How to write about a healthy diet

كيفية الكتابة عن نظام غذائى صحى

- I want to be fit and healthy.
- I go on a healthy diet.
- I eat (أطعمة صحية).
- I drink (مشروبات صحية).
- I never eat or drink (أطعمة ومشروبات غير صحية).
- Everyone should have a healthy diet to live a longer, healthier life.

Example

A healthy diet

I live in a village. I like it very much. The air here is very clean. The diet in my village is very healthy. To start with, people in my village eat a lot of fruit and vegetables, which are very healthy. They eat a lot of rice, nuts and fish. These have a lot of protein. They are all healthy. Another important point is that they eat dairy products that make their bones strong. Furthermore, they get enough sleep. They sleep early and get up early. That's why all the people in my village are healthy. To conclude, everyone should have a healthy diet to live a longer, healthier life.

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

1 Read the following, then answer the questions:

المنوفية ٢٠٢٣

If you want to be healthy, you should eat some of all types of food. We need to drink eight glasses of water every day. Dairy products like milk and cheese help us to have strong bones. Meat, cheese and nuts have protein in them and we need protein to have a **strong** body. A lot of sugar is bad for your teeth. Examples of healthy snacks are fruit and nuts. People need to eat five to ten pieces of fresh fruit and vegetables every day. People often like fast food because it has lots of fat and sugar in **it**. Food is usually healthy and good for you when it is fresh.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the best title for this passage?

.....

2. Give examples of healthy snacks.

.....

3. Why do you think we need dairy products?

.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The word ..... is the opposite of the word "**strong**".
   a) serious b) weak c) active d) lazy
5. The underlined pronoun "**it**" refers to ..... .
   a) snack b) protein c) milk d) fast food
6. Meat is an important source of ..... .
   a) protein b) carbohydrate c) salt d) vitamin

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Those tomatoes are too big. You need to ..... them into small pieces. دمياط ٢٠٢٢
   a) serve b) fry c) chop d) pour
2. Some tests could be ....., but studying makes them easier.
   a) hard b) famous c) easy d) light
3. Before you fry food, you should ..... some oil in a pan.
   a) make b) heat c) serve d) fire
4. Which of these types of food doesn't have much protein? ..... . الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٣
   a) meat b) fish c) nuts d) apples
5. Mum needs to ..... eggs and milk before making omelette. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
   a) wash b) fry c) beat d) chop

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

6. Some animals, like lions and tigers are ..... .
   a) low b) easy c) strong d) weak
7. Food is usually healthy and good for you when it is ..... . الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
   a) fresh b) old c) ancient d) ugly
8. ..... leave the water running while cleaning your teeth.
   a) Don't b) Not c) No d) Doesn't
9. ..... a knife to chop the vegetables. الأقصر ٢٠٢٣
   a) Used b) Use c) Using d) Uses
10. Sayed, ... early next time.
   a) came b) come c) comes d) coming

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. ..... (not/serve) food in broken dishes. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣
2. ..... (Taking) your time to complete the puzzle correctly.
3. Be kind to others and ..... (say) unkind things.
4. ..... (Doesn't) play in the street. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣

4 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"A healthy diet"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Challenging Questions

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

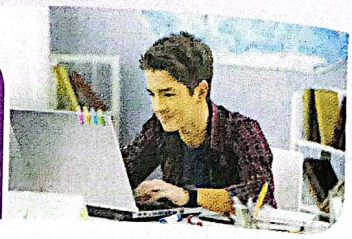
1. ..... (Tell) me such things anymore.
2. ..... (Not/late) for school.
3. ..... (careful) when you use the knife.

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

STUDY

Watch a video

Lessons 5 & 6



SB pages 19 & 20 | WB pages 83 & 84

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

amount (n)	كمية	main (adj)	أساسى/رئيسى
balanced (adj)	متوازن	own (ed) (v)	يمتلك
cook (n)	طاهٍ/طباخ	point (n)	نقطة
depend (ed) on (v)	يعتمد على	reason (n)	سبب
diet (n)	وجبة/نظام غذائى	relax (ed) (v)	يسترخى
explain (ed) (v)	يشرح	surprise (d) (v)	يدهش/يذهل
introduce (d) (v)	يقدم	upset (adj)	متضايق/منزعج

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

athletics club (n)	نادٍ/حصة ألعاب القوى	perhaps (adv)	ربما
furthermore (adv)	علاوة على ذلك	Okinawans	سكان جزيرة أوكيناوا
happen (ed) (v)	يحدث	restaurant (n)	مطعم

Check Point

Choose and complete: restaurant - cook - owns - introduces

1. My uncle is very rich. He ..... three companies.
2. We went to a ..... to have lunch.
3. He works as a ..... in a café.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

a day	فى كل يوم	make > sure	يتأكد
do > some drawing	يقوم ببعض الرسم	that's why	ولهذا السبب

Prepositions — حروف الجر

advice for	نصيحة لـ	speak to	يتحدث مع/إلى
in addition to	بالإضافة إلى	to conclude = on conclusion	وفى الختام
revise for exams	يراجع للامتحانات	worried about	قلق على

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	P.P.	Present	Past simple	P.P.
bring يحضر	brought	brought	give يعطى	gave	given
get up ينهض/يستيقظ	got up	got up	mean يعنى	meant	meant

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

1 Foods

أطعمة

peppers	فلفل	sweet potato	بطاطا
spinach	سبانخ		

2 Countries & Cities

بلاد ومدن

Mali	مالى	Sierra Leone	سيراليون
Okinawa Islands	جزر أوكيناوا اليابانية	Tokyo	طوكيو
Senegal	السنغال	West Africa	غرب إفريقيا

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Words and Synonyms

الكلمات ومرادفها

Word الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning) مرادفها
upset متضايق/منزعج	worried/ unhappy قلق/غير سعيد

Suffix اللاحقة

Word الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
athlete (n) لاعب رياضى	-ics	تحويل الاسم إلى الرياضة	athletics (n) ألعاب القوى

هذا الجزء يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المتشابهة فى الهجاء ولكن مختلفة فى المعنى.

Similar Spelling - Different Meaning

Word الكلمة	Similar word الكلمة المشابهة
main أساسى/رئيسى	mean يعنى

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 5

SB page 19

Pre-listening question: - How often do you do a sport?

Listen to three teenagers and complete the information with these words.

Ali My name's Ali. My mum and dad own[1] a restaurant and I often help in the kitchen. The cook is my friend and he is teaching me to make different cakes. The problem is, I'm always trying them, so I eat too many cakes. I also know I don't do enough exercise, but that's because I don't have time. When I'm not at school or doing my homework, I'm usually at the restaurant. I don't want to stop helping my parents, so I don't know what to do.

(1) يملك (2) نظام غذائى صحى

(3) وجبات سريعة (4) حصة ألعاب القوى

(5) طاقة (6) يضايق

Eman I'm Eman. I do a lot of sport and I have a very healthy diet[2]. I eat lots of fruit and vegetables and I almost never eat fast food[3]. I never eat snacks either, not even when I'm really hungry after athletics club[4]. I know eating snacks isn't good for you. But I'm tired all the time. I never feel I get enough sleep, even when I go to bed early! I want to have more energy[5].

Tamer I'm Tamer. I want to go to art school when I'm older, but I don't have enough time to do any drawing or painting at the moment. I'm working really hard at school. I'm worried about my exams. When I feel worried, I don't feel hungry. My mother doesn't think I eat enough, so then she gives me even more food. I don't want to upset[6] her, so I can't tell her it's too much!

Post-listening question:

- Summarise the problems that the three teenagers face.

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

Pre-reading question:

- What kinds of food do you like?

Read the advice and answer the questions.

SB page 19

It's good that you don't eat fast food(1), but if you feel very hungry between meals, it's a good idea to have a snack.

How about bringing a few healthy snacks to school on the days when you have athletics club(2)? If you want to have more energy(3), why don't you try eating more food that gives you energy like rice and pasta? Perhaps you could eat a bigger breakfast in the morning, too.

(1) وجبات سريعة
(2) حصة ألعاب القوى
(3) طاقة

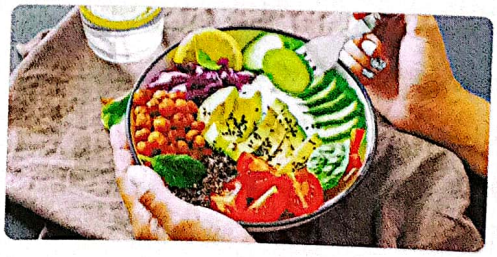
Post-reading questions:

1. What kinds of healthy snacks should we eat?
2. Why should we go on a healthy diet?

Life Skills

Make sure you have a balanced diet and eat some of all the types of food.

Eat healthy snacks, sleep well and don't worry too much!



Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

Pre-reading question:

Lesson 6

- Do people in your country have a healthy diet? If yes, talk briefly about it.

Read about Okinawa and answer the questions. *SB page 20*

The Okinawan diet

I come from Okinawa (1) in Japan and the diet on my island (2) is very healthy.

This is for three main reasons (3). Firstly, we eat a lot of fresh vegetables. We eat green, purple and yellow vegetables like spinach (4), sweet potato (5) and peppers (6). Furthermore, we don't have much fat in our diet: we only eat a little meat and a few dairy products (7). Another important thing is that we eat a very healthy breakfast. We have soup (8) with spinach or eggs with rice, and this gives us lots of energy to start the day.

Okinawa Island

As you can see, our diet is healthy. That's why Okinawans live a long time. Some of the oldest people in the world live on my island.

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

Okinawa /ˌəʊkɪˈnɑːwə/ spinach /spɪnɪdʒ/

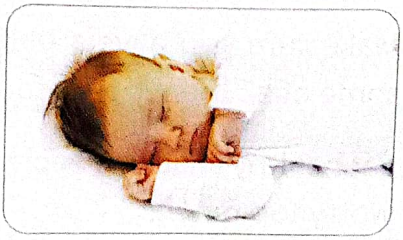
Post-reading questions:

1. What sorts of food do people in Okinawa eat and not eat?
2. Which Okinawan meal is very healthy? Why?

(1) جزيرة اوكيناوا	(2) جزيرة
(3) أسباب	(4) سبانخ
(5) بطاطا حلوة	(6) فلفل
(7) منتجات الألبان	(8) شوربة

Read about sleep and answer the questions. *WB page 81* Lesson 5

How much sleep should we have? The answer depends on your age. Very small babies sleep for about 14 or more hours a day! Children aged six to seventeen should sleep for about ten hours a night. Then you need less sleep. Most people, aged 18–65, need about eight hours' sleep.



Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

Pre-reading question:

- What kinds of food should we eat?

Complete the text with these expressions. *WB page 82*

A healthy diet

It may surprise (1) you to know that West African countries have one of the healthiest diets (2) in the world. Why is this?

Firstly, people in countries such as Senegal, Mali and Sierra Leone eat a lot of fruit and vegetables, which are very healthy. **Furthermore**, the people eat a lot of rice, nuts and fish. These have a lot of protein (3).

Another important point is that the people of West Africa don't eat much food with a lot of salt and sugar in it.

To conclude, a healthy diet means eating enough healthy things like fish and vegetables, and not eating a lot of salt, sugar and fast food.

(1) يفاجئ

(2) نظام غذائى

(3) بروتين

Post-reading questions:

1. What do people in Senegal, Mali and Sierra Leone usually eat?
2. Is the diet healthy or unhealthy? Why?

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering Understanding Applying Analysing Evaluating Creating

Practise more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My mother ..... on me to help her with the housework. الغربية ٢٠٢٢

a) depends **b)** protects **c)** improves **d)** pours

2. A healthy person should have a/an ..... diet every day. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣

a) balanced **b)** normal **c)** unusual **d)** unhealthy

3. Your ..... is the kind of food that you eat every day. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣

a) work **b)** exercise **c)** diet **d)** homework

4. ..... can be green, red or yellow. المنيا ٢٠٢٣

a) Beans **b)** Potatoes **c)** Peppers **d)** Paper

5. Hind is ..... because she lost her mobile phone. المنوفية ٢٠٢٢

a) happy **b)** pleased **c)** annoying **d)** upset

6. I went to the ..... club to keep fit.

a) athletics **b)** athlete **c)** sport **d)** spot's

7. Dad ..... us with tickets to the cinema.

a) explained **b)** owned **c)** surprised **d)** depended

8. We ..... a nice cat as a family pet.

a) make **b)** own **c)** happen **d)** introduce

9. Mum is a great ..... . She makes delicious meals for us.

a) cook **b)** cooker **c)** result **d)** amount

10. My mother gave me a large ..... of pasta for dinner.

a) reason **b)** diet **c)** amount **d)** number

11. My father wants to go to a green place to ..... .

a) worry **b)** work **c)** relax **d)** dance

12. It's important to clean my teeth twice ..... day.

a) at **b)** for **c)** in **d)** a

13. I love to ..... some drawing and paint pictures.

a) do **b)** make **c)** stay **d)** write

14. ..... is a vegetable that is very healthy.

a) Cheese **b)** Spinach **c)** Salt **d)** Butter

15. You should ..... sure that you eat all types of healthy food.

a) say **b)** take **c)** do **d)** make

16. Pasta is the ..... ingredient in koshari.

a) main **b)** same **c)** different **d)** soft

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

C Language

Quantifiers

مُحددات الكمية

1 enough:

عند التعبير عن العدد أو الكمية (كافية/غير كافية) نستخدم:

- **(enough)** بمعنى (كاف/بقدر كاف) / **(not enough)** (ليس كافيًا) ويأتى بعدها اسم جمع أو اسم غير معدود (كمية).

enough/not enough + اسم جمع /كمية غير معدودة

- He doesn't do **enough** exercise.
- There are **enough** chairs for everybody to sit.

2 too many:

عند التعبير عن عدد كثير جدًا عن اللازم نستخدم:

- **(too many)** بمعنى (كثيرًا جدًا أكثر من اللازم) ويأتى بعدها اسم جمع فقط.

too many + اسم جمع

- There are **too many people** on the bus. I'll take the next one.
- Your bag has **too many books** inside. You can't close it.

3 too much:

عند التعبير عن كمية كثيرة جدًا عن اللازم نستخدم:

- **(too much)** بمعنى (كثيرًا جدًا أكثر من اللازم) ويأتى بعدها اسم غير معدود (كمية) فقط.

too much + كمية غير معدودة

- There is **too much sugar** in the tea. I can't drink it.
- Don't put **too much salt**, please.

تمكنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Got it ?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. There were ..... (too much) people at the concert and we couldn't see anything.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (too many) لأن كلمة people اسم جمع.

2. You spend ..... (too many) time at the computer. You should study your lessons.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (too much) لأن كلمة time اسم مفرد لا يُعد كمية.

3. You don't have ..... (ingredients enough) to bake cookies.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (enough ingredients) لأن enough يأتى بعدها الاسم.

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

PRACTICE

Language Exercises

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You don't need to buy anything. I think we have ..... food for the journey. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

a) many b) any c) enough d) little

2. I did too ..... shopping yesterday. I haven't got any money now.

a) much b) many c) enough d) few

3. There are too ..... things in this box. I can't carry it.

a) few b) much c) many d) enough

4. I ate ..... bread. I've got a stomach ache. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

a) too much b) too many c) enough d) any

5. There are too ..... people at the station, so it's crowded. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣

a) few b) much c) a lot d) many

6. There are too ..... traffic in the streets of Cairo. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣

a) many b) any c) much d) few

7. You shouldn't eat too ..... sweets. They are bad for you.

a) any b) much c) a little d) many

8. You don't have ..... vegetables on your plate for a healthy meal.

a) few b) much c) a lot d) enough

9. We have ..... air pollution in our country.

a) too much b) too many c) a lot d) any

10. Don't use too ..... social media or you will be addicted to them.

a) any b) much c) enough d) some

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Eman feels tired all the time and doesn't get ..... (sleep enough). الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
2. There ..... (be) enough bread in the fridge. We need to buy some.
3. Ahmed eats too ..... (much) cakes. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
4. I don't like this tea. There is too ..... (many) sugar in it! الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
5. There were ..... (too much) students in the school concert yesterday.
6. I don't like people who ask ..... (too much) questions. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

D Skills

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.

Speaking

Giving advice إعطاء النصح

online

- It's good that + فاعل + فعل ..... من الجيد أن.....
  - **It's good that you don't eat** fast food.

- It's a good idea to + inf. ..... إنه لفكرة جيدة أن .....
  - **It's a good idea to have** a snack between meals.

- How about + v. + ing? .....؟ ماذا عن.....
  - **How about bringing** a few healthy snacks to school?

- Why don't you + inf.? .....؟ لم لا .....
  - **Why don't you try** eating more food that gives you energy?

- You could + inf. ..... يمكنك أن .....
  - Perhaps **you could eat** a bigger breakfast in the morning.

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialogue:

Menna and Nada are discussing what to do at the weekend.

Nada : Hi, Menna! I'm thinking about what to do this weekend.

Menna : (1).....?

Nada : That sounds fun! But it might rain. I don't feel like going to the park.

Menna : (2)..... .

Nada : That's a great idea! But I watched all the films there.

Menna : (3).....?

Nada : I love that idea! I'll wait for you to watch TV together.

Menna : Can I bring my younger sister with me?

Nada : (4)..... . I want to see her.

Menna : (5)..... . I'll come at seven.

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Nader is advising Lily to take a break and relax.

Nader : Hi, Lily! How's your day going?
Lily : Hi, Nader! (1)..... .
Nader : Tired? (2).....?
Lily : That's a good idea. I'll take a break and relax.
Nader : What do you feel like doing later?
Lily : (3).....?
Nader : That sounds great! I can show you bike tricks in the park.
Lily : Awesome! Can you teach me how to do all the tricks?
Nader : (4)..... . We could practise together.
Lily : (5).....! I can't wait to learn.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I'm worried ..... my test tomorrow because I didn't study enough.
   a) about **b)** out **c)** of **d)** for
2. ..... sure to say "thank you" when someone helps you.
   a) Do **b)** Make **c)** Have **d)** Take
3. The ..... for his anger is still unknown.
   a) diet **b)** spinach **c)** result **d)** reason
4. My friend ..... me to her sister.
   a) introduced **b)** produced **c)** owned **d)** relaxed
5. Try to have a ..... diet to keep you healthy. الأقصر ٢٠٢٣
   a) balanced **b)** long **c)** fresh **d)** salty
6. I asked the teacher to ..... the story to me.
   a) own **b)** complain **c)** explain **d)** speak
7. The little girl was ..... when she dropped the ice cream on the ground.
   a) famous **b)** tiring **c)** upset **d)** happy

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

8. There's ..... smoke in here, I can't breathe. المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
a) too many b) too much c) enough d) any

9. He is poor, he has ..... money. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣
a) many b) much c) a lot of d) little

10. There is ..... food for everyone. We all can eat.
a) enough b) many c) little d) any

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. She doesn't have ..... (lot) time to watch TV.
2. **A:** ..... (are) you like a cup of tea? **B:** Yes, please. أسيوط ٢٠٢٣
3. I haven't seen ..... (some) tigers in the zoo. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
4. I don't have ..... (money enough) to buy that car.

4 Write an email of NINETY (90) words to your friend Tala to tell her about your balanced diet. Your name is Sama and your email is sama@student.com. Your friend's email is tala@gmail.com.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Challenging Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب

1. You can't run 10 miles. You aren't .....; you need more training.
a) enough fit b) many fit c) much fit d) fit enough

2. I'm very sick and my mother doesn't think I eat ..... .
a) few b) many c) enough d) not enough

3. Mazin is worried. That means he's ..... .
a) happy b) upset c) usual d) clever

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

Review On Unit 8

Vocabulary

add (ed) (to)	يضيف
allergic (to)	لدية حساسية (من)
amount	كمية
balanced diet	نظام غذائى متوازن
beat (with)	يخفق (بيض/زبدة)
boil (ed)	يغلى/يسلق
butter	زبدة
chop (ped) (into)	يقطع
dairy products	منتجات ألبان
depend (ed) on	يعتمد على
explain (ed)	يشرح
fat	دهون
frying pan	قدر القلى
heat (ed)	يسخن
humans	البشر
nuts	مكسرات
offer (ed)	يعرض
oven	فرن
pour (ed) (into)	يصب (فى)
serve (d)	يقدم طعامًا/يخدم
soup	حساء/شوربة
spices	توابل/بهارات
spicy	حار/متبل
taste	يتذوق/مذاق
teenager	مراهق

Language

1 Countable and uncountable nouns:

الاسم المفرد الذى يُعد	الاسم الجمع أو الكمية	الاسم الجمع	الاسم الكمية
a/an	some/any/a lot of	a few/many	a little/much

2 like/would like:

1. like + (اسم /v.ing/to + inf.) (يحب)

- I like orange juice.
- I don't like watching horror films.

Do/Does + subject الفاعل + like + (اسم /v.ing/to + inf.)? (هل يحب ...؟)

- Do you like coffee?
- Does your sister like to play squash?

2. would ('d) like + (اسم /to + inf.) (يود/يريد أن)

- I'd like to have some juice.
- I'd like some beans, please.

Would + subject الفاعل + like + (اسم /to + inf.)? (هل يود/هل يريد أن؟)

- Would you like a sandwich?

3 Imperatives:

- Chop the tomatoes!
- Don't chop them too small!

4 enough/too many/too much:

- He doesn't do enough exercise.
- There are too many people on the bus. I'll take the next one.
- There is too much sugar in the tea. I can't drink it.

Skills

1. Offering, Accepting and Refusing food:

- Would you like a sandwich?
- Thank you, but I'm really full.
- Do you like coffee?
- No, I don't. I prefer tea.

2. Giving Advice:

- It's good that you don't eat fast food.
- How about bringing a few healthy snacks to school?
- Why don't you try eating more food that gives you energy?
- Perhaps, you could eat a bigger breakfast in the morning.

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

Question Bank

Al-Adwaa Test On Unit 8

24

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

الغربية ٢٠٢٣
نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1. Where is sfenj found?
a) In Egypt. **b)** In Morocco.
c) In Britain. **d)** In India.

2. What does sfenj have?
a) Sweet. **b)** Fat.
c) Sugar. **d)** Both b and c.

3. How is sfenj?
a) Sweet. **b)** Juicy.
c) Spicy. **d)** Salty.

4. Is sfenj healthy?
a) Yes. **b)** No.
c) Maybe. **d)** I don't know.

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Adam is going home, but Youssef tells him to have lunch together at the new restaurant.

Youssef : Where are you going after work?
Adam : (1)..... .
Youssef : (2).....?
Adam : Great! Where could we go to have lunch together?
Youssef : (3)..... .
Adam : That's good. They serve good food at the new restaurant.
Youssef : (4).....?
Adam : I don't like fish.
Youssef : We could have fried chicken.
Adam : (5).....! I like fried chicken.

• There are too many people on the bus. I'll take the next one.
• There is too much sugar in the tea. I can't drink it.

spicy taste teenager

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions: الغربية ٢٠٢٣

In every country, there are always some snack foods. For example, falafel is very popular in Egypt. It's made from a mixture of beans, fresh vegetables and spices. It's really delicious. In Morocco, sfenj is usually made by street food sellers. It has lots of fat and sugar and it is crispy. Samosa is popular in India. It is a snack with spicy vegetables. Rojak is a Malaysian spicy fruit salad with a mixture of flavours unlike any other. **It** is spicy, sweet, salty, soft and crispy. What makes the fruit salad wonderful is the sweet and spicy sauce. Finally, we must try them all. They are all delicious.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the passage?.....
2. Where does rojak come from?.....
3. Which of these snacks would you like to try? Why? .....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Sfenj is popular in ..... .
   a) Egypt **b)** India **c)** Malysia **d)** Morocco
5. Samosa is a snack with ..... vegetables.
   a) spicy **b)** sweet **c)** ugly **d)** bad
6. The underlined pronoun "**It**" refers to the ..... .
   a) falafel **b)** samosa **c)** sfenj **d)** rojak

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You should eat healthy food to get the ..... you need. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) energy **b)** speed **c)** diary **d)** juicy
2. Many people are ..... to nuts, so they shouldn't eat any of them. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣
   a) addicted **b)** popular **c)** allergic **d)** ready
3. We cook hawawashi in the ..... . دمياط ٢٠٢٢
   a) fridge **b)** oven **c)** mixer **d)** heater
4. If you feel bored, try ..... some drawing to relax. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) taking **b)** doing **c)** giving **d)** making

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

5. We eat with a knife and a ..... .
a) bowl b) pot c) pan d) fork

6. I really like ..... fruits like strawberries and peaches. المنيا ٢٠٢٣
a) salty b) juicy c) spicy d) hungry

7. I always eat ..... food. That's why I have lots of energy.
a) delicious b) unhealthy c) healthy d) tasty

8. Don't ..... the birds, I've already done that. WB
a) feed b) feeding c) feeds d) fed

9. She ..... playing tennis. WB
a) likes b) likes to c) 'd like d) 'd like to

10. Kareem always eats ..... olives with his salad, but not too many. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣
a) some b) many c) a little d) a lot

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Don't ..... (heats) butter for too long. القليوبية ٢٠٢٣
2. There are ..... (any) rocks on the side of the road.
3. You don't eat ..... (a lot) fruit, you should eat some more.
4. I can't wait for them. I haven't got ..... (time enough). المنوفية ٢٠٢٢

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"Fast food" بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Assess your progress ★ ★ ★ ★ ★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

Monthly Models On Units 7&8

هذه النماذج ستساعدك فى التدرب على الاختبارات الشهرية.

February Model 1 On Unit 7

15

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Huda's new mobile screen is damaged.

Hend : You look sad! What's the matter?
Huda : (1)..... .
Hend : (2).....?
Huda : When I opened the box, it was damaged.
Hend : (3).....?
Huda : I ordered it last week.
Hend : When was the delivery?
Huda : It was today. What should I do?
Hend : (4)..... .
Huda : Ok, I'll send them an email. (5)..... .

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. This clever jacket uses a/an ..... to make you warmer when the weather is cold.
   a) helicopter **b)** app **c)** choice **d)** language
2. We should use ..... on buildings in sunny countries like Egypt. دمياط ٢٠٢٢
   a) turbines **b)** solar panels **c)** airplanes **d)** glasses
3. It's funny how Amr always ..... when we want him to do something.
   a) pulls **b)** disappears **c)** guesses **d)** designs
4. Everyone should ..... enough sleep at night to feel better the next morning.
   a) keep **b)** make **c)** save **d)** get
5. I don't think ..... be able to come to your party.
   a) I won't **b)** I have **c)** I'll **d)** I am
6. We'll win if we ..... well.
   a) play **b)** plays **c)** played **d)** playing

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I don't know when he will ..... (coming).
2. You shouldn't ..... (swam) in the sea if it's very cold.
3. It's not late. I think we ..... (should) take a taxi.
4. We won't go to the beach this weekend if it ..... (be) windy.

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

February Model 2 On Unit 8

15

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Tamer likes to taste new things, but Dalia likes vegetables as they are healthy.

Tamer : I really like trying unusual food. What about you?

Dalia : I don't like to taste new things. (1)..... ?

Tamer : The most unusual food I've tried was called 'Champorado' with 'tuyo'.

Dalia : I don't like unusual food. (2)..... .

Tamer : Why do you eat a lot of vegetables?

Dalia : (3)..... .

Tamer : What about fesikh?

Dalia : (4)..... .

Tamer : (5)..... ?

Dalia : I don't like fesikh because it smells horrible!

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **A:** Would you like to eat anything? **B:** No, thank you, I'm really ..... .
   a) full **b)** thirsty **c)** empty **d)** hungry
2. If you want to be healthy, you should eat some of all ..... of food.
   a) types **b)** bones **c)** forks **d)** bowls
3. It may ..... you to know that you won the competition.
   a) discuss **b)** upset **c)** surprise **d)** worry
4. Falafel is really delicious and it is very ..... in Egypt.
   a) horrible **b)** bad **c)** ugly **d)** popular
5. Does your uncle have ..... yellow van?
   a) a **b)** an **c)** some **d)** any
6. ..... some beans and put them in a pan.
   a) To wash **b)** Washed **c)** Washing **d)** Wash

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. We need to go to the greengrocer's. There are ..... (little) potatoes left.
2. I can't help you. I have ..... (too much) problems right now.
3. ..... (not/open) the window, it is cold.
4. Never ..... (doing) that again.

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

Unit 9

Watch, listen and make

Objectives of the unit

Reading	An internet chat message; a review of an art gallery; Little Women; a review of a film
Writing	A short review; a paragraph on a musician
Listening	A report about an orchestra; an invitation on the telephone
Speaking	Saying what people can do; talking about preferences and giving recommendations; inviting a person somewhere
Language	Talking about ability: can, know how to and be able to
Life Skills	Collaboration; respect for diversity

Tapescript

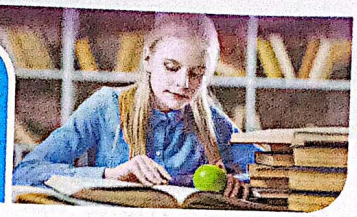
تشير لأسئلة كتاب الطالب SB تشير لأسئلة كتاب التدريبات WB

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

STUDY

Watch a video

Lessons 1 & 2



SB pages 22 - 25 | WB pages 84 & 85

A Vocabulary

- قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيدًا لدرجة الإتقان حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.
- قم باختبار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الذهاب لملحق التقويم وتسميع الكلمات الخاصة بالدرسين.

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

act (ed) (v)	يمثل	painting (n)	لوحة ملونة
artist (n)	فنان	play (ed) (v/n)	يعزف/مسرحية
calligraphy (n)	فن الخط	recommend (ed) (v)	يوصى/يرشح
century (n)	قرن (١٠٠ عام)	review (n)	نقد
clay (n)	طين/صلصال	scenery (n)	منظر طبيعى
colourful (adj)	زاهى الألوان	script (n)	نص كتابى/سيناريو
concert hall (n)	قاعة حفلات موسيقية	statue (n)	تمثال
costumes (n)	ملابس خاصة بمناسبة/أزياء	stone (n)	حجر
drama club (n)	نادى الدراما	textile (n)	نسيج
Islamic (adj)	إسلامى	theatre (n)	مسرح

Types of art أنواع الفن

cartoon (n)	رسم متحرك	portrait (n)	صورة فنية للوجه
drawing (n)	رسم	pottery (n)	فخار/خزف
photograph (n)	صورة فوتوغرافية	sculpture (n)	النحت

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

ability (n)	قدرة	excited (adj)	متحمس/منفعل
activities (n)	أنشطة	French (n)	اللغة الفرنسية
area (n)	منطقة	look (ed) like (v)	يشبه
damaged (adj)	تالف	musical instrument (n)	آلة موسيقية
describe (d) (v)	يصف	programme (n)	برنامج

Check Point

Choose and complete: portrait - excited - damaged - artist

1. I like drawing. I want to be a/an ..... .
2. Morad painted a ..... of his daughter.
3. He was very ..... when he won the prize.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

(n) = noun | (adj) = adjective | (prep) = preposition
(v) = verb | (adv) = adverb | (conj) = conjunction

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

answer	the phone	يرد على الهاتف	play	an instrument	يعزف على آلة موسيقية
do	make-up	يقوم بوضع مكياج		music	يعزف الموسيقى
have	an end-of-year show	لديه عرض نهاية العام	take	photos	يلتقط صور
paint	scenery	يرسم منظرًا طبيعيًا	sew	costumes (أزياء خاصة بمناسبة)	يخيط ملابس
pay	money	يدفع مالًا	write	a script	يكتب نصًا/سيناريو

Prepositions — حروف الجر

from my point of view	من وجهة نظرى	interested in	مهتم بـ
get ready for	يستعد لـ	look through	ينظر من خلال
help with	يساعد فى	the best at	الأفضل فى

Check Point

Choose and complete: at - by - do - painting

1. Nancy's favourite hobby is ..... sceneries.
2. Most girls like to ..... make-up when they go out.
3. Manal is the best girl ..... English.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر.

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs — تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	P.P.	Present		Past simple	P.P.
show	يعرض/يبين	showed	shown	speak	يتحدث	spoke	spoken
pay	يدفع (مالًا)	paid	paid	teach	يعلم/يدرس	taught	taught
sew	يخيط	sewed	sewn				

Words and Opposites — الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
ancient	قديم جدًا/أثرى	modern	حديث
busy	مزدحم/مشغول	empty/free	فارغ
cool	رائع	terrible	فظيع

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا
لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية

1 **talk to + someone + about + n/v.ing** — يتحدث إلى .... عن ....

- I talk to **the people** at drama club about **acting**.

2 **interested in + v.ing/n.** — مهتم بـ

- I was interested in **seeing** art by Egyptians from the 20th and 21st centuries.

3 **recommend + v.ing/n.** — يوصى بـ/يرشح

- I recommend **visiting** the Egyptian Museum of Modern Art if you are in Cairo.

4 **(be) + the best at + v.ing/n.** — يكون الأفضل فى

- Lara is the best at **doing** make-up.
- Mariam is the best at **English**.

5 **Study the following places** — ادرس هذه الأماكن

El Sawy Culture Wheel	ساقية الصاوى	the Egyptian Museum of Modern Art	المتحف المصرى للفن الحديث
the Cairo Opera House	دار الأوبرا المصرية	the Textile Museum	متحف النسيج

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I like talking ..... my father about the family history.
   a) to b) for c) on d) out
2. I recommend ..... the zoo as it's sunny today.
   a) visit b) visited c) visiting d) to visiting
3. My cousin is interested in ..... medicine.
   a) study b) studies c) studied d) studying
4. I booked a ticket for a concert at El Sawy Culture ..... .
   a) Whale b) Whole c) Wheel d) Wall
5. My sister is the best at ..... clothes.
   a) sews b) to sew c) sew d) sewing

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ

Definitions — التعريفات

artist	فنان	a person who paints or draws for a job
cartoon	رسم متحرك	a funny drawing usually showing people or animals
costumes	ملابس/أزياء خاصة	clothes that you wear to look like someone or something else
free	مجانًا	without paying money
portrait	صورة فنية للوجه	a painting or photograph of a person's face
pottery	فخار/خزف	things that are made from clay, such as cups and plates
script	سيناريو	the words of a play
sculpture	نحت	art made from stone or wood that looks like people, animals or other things

Words and Synonyms — الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
busy	مزدحم	crowded	مزدحم
cool	رائع	wonderful	رائع

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
art (n)	رسم/فن	-ist		تحويل الاسم لاسم فاعل		artist (n)	فنان
music (n)	موسيقى	-al		تحويل الاسم لصفة		musical (adj)	موسيقى

هذا الجزء يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المتشابهة فى الهجاء ولكن مختلفة فى المعنى.

Similar Spelling - Different Meaning

Word	الكلمة	Similar word	الكلمة المشابهة
cartoon	رسم متحرك	carton	صندوق كرتون
hall	قاعة	hole	حفرة
costumes	ملابس/أزياء	customs	عادات
pottery	فخار/خزف	poetry	شِعر

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

B Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-reading question: - Have you ever been a part of the end-of-year show? If yes, what did you do?

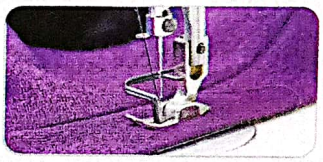
Read the chat messages about the activities on page 22. Was your idea in Discuss correct?

SB page 23

Habiba: Mrs Medhat says we can have an end-of-year show! It will be about the play(1) we read in the English class. I'm very excited, but I need help! Can anyone act(2) or write scripts(3)? We also need people who are able to do make-up, sew costumes(4), paint scenery(5) and play instruments(6).

Lamar: Cool! I can talk to the people at drama club(7) about acting.

Azza: Mariam and I know how to sew costumes! We love clothes and Lara is THE BEST at doing make-up!



Lara: YES!! I can do make-up.

Manal: I can paint scenery if you want, but I can't do make-up. Are you able to help with music, Talia?

Talia: Yes, I can play the music! It sounds fun. Habiba, you are the best at writing, can you write the script?

Habiba: OK, I can try to write something …
You are all amazing!!!
Thanks so much!

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

costume /kɒstjuːm/ scenery /siːnəri/

Post-reading question:

- Do you think the end-of-year show will be interesting? Why/Why not?

(1) مسرحية (2) يمثل (3) سيناريوهات

(4) يخيط ملابس (5) يرسم منظرًا طبيعيًا (6) يعزف على آلات موسيقية

(7) نادى الدراما

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

Pre-reading question: - Which museum would you like to visit? Why?

Lesson 2

Read the review and check the bolded words in your dictionary. Which types of art from Exercise 1 does it describe? *SB page 24*

Review of the Museum of Modern Egyptian Art

by Wagdy Badr

Last month, I visited the Egyptian Museum of Modern Art in Cairo. Egypt is famous for its ancient art, but I was interested in seeing art by Egyptians from the 20th and 21st centuries(1).

From my point of view, the artists(2) were really good because they showed what life was like in Egypt in the past and now. There were portraits(3) of both important and normal Egyptian people. I thought the cartoons(4) were also really cool! I also saw lots of sculptures(5), both big and small.

My favourite thing in the museum was a painting(6) called *Al Madina* by Mahmoud Said. It made me feel happy because it was very colourful(7).

The best thing about the museum is that it is free to visit! I recommend(8) visiting it if you are in Cairo, but it's a good idea to go early when it is not very busy.

(1) قرون
(2) فنانون
(3) لوحات فنية للوجه
(4) رسوم متحركة
(5) منحوتات
(6) لوحة ملونة
(7) زاهى الألوان
(8) يوصى/يرشح

Complete the review of a museum with these words. *WB page 85*

Review of the Textile Museum(1) in Cairo, by Injy Zaki

Last month, I visited the Textile Museum in Cairo. The museum has lots of clothes from different times in history. I thought the clothes from Ancient Egypt were fantastic. From my point of view, the statues(2) showing people wearing the clothes really teach you about life in the past. My favourite thing was the Islamic area(3) where you can see different kinds of calligraphy(4).

I recommend looking at the clothes from other countries, too, such as Iran. They are very interesting. If you want to take photos, it is a good idea to take a good camera, because the museum is quite dark.

(1) متحف النسيج
(2) تماثيل
(3) منطقة إسلامية
(4) فن الخط

Post-reading question:

- Where is the Textile Museum?

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering Understanding Applying Analysing Evaluating Creating

Practise more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Writing ..... of films needs special skills. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣
   a) scripts b) sculptures c) names d) lists
2. The ..... which the actors are wearing are wonderful. القليوبية ٢٠٢٣
   a) costumes b) instruments c) customs d) scenes
3. I like walking along the Nile to see the beautiful ..... . الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
   a) rubbish b) pollution c) traffic d) scenery
4. A/An ..... is a person who paints or draws for a job. دمياط ٢٠٢٣
   a) doctor b) guide c) artist d) footballer
5. Hoda is good at ..... make-up. أسيوط ٢٠٢٣
   a) pointing b) acting c) making d) doing
6. ..... means art made from stone or wood that looks like people, animals or other things. القليوبية ٢٠٢٣
   a) Cartoon b) Sculpture c) Portrait d) Pottery
7. ..... is the art of writing beautifully with special pens.
   a) Pottery b) Photography c) Calligraphy d) Scenery
8. I made many new friends in the ..... club. They love acting like me.
   a) drama b) cartoon c) drawing d) photograph
9. ..... is the art of making objects like bowls and vases out of clay.
   a) Pottery b) Wood c) Calligraphy d) Painting
10. My sister likes playing musical ..... . الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣
    a) costumes b) instruments c) acts d) shows
11. The children spend their Saturdays watching ..... on TV. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣
    a) cartons b) cartoons c) costumes d) views
12. My grandma was good at ..... fine clothes. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣
    a) acting b) sewing c) sowing d) singing
13. Salma is very happy because she is going to ..... in a play next summer. البحيرة ٢٠٢٢
    a) add b) act c) save d) make
14. My friend is the best ..... drawing; he can make the most beautiful pictures.
    a) at b) in c) for d) on
15. I am interested in seeing art by Egyptians from the 20th and 21st ..... . الغربية ٢٠٢٢
    a) countries b) cartoons c) cartons d) centuries

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

C Language

Ability

القدرة

1 can/can't:

هناك عدة طرق للتعبير عن قدرتك لفعل شىء ما:
(يستطيع أن/لا يستطيع أن)

Affirmative الإثبات

Subject الفاعل + can + inf.

e.g: - I **can** paint scenery if you want.
- My mum **can** sew clothes.

Negative النفى

Subject الفاعل + cannot (can't) + inf.

e.g: - Sama **can't play** chess.
- My sisters **can't do** make-up.

Interrogative السؤال

Can + subject الفاعل + inf. ....?

e.g: **A:** Can Mohamed **swim** well? **B:** Yes, he can.
A: Can you **paint** this wall? **B:** No, I can't.

Got it ?

تمكنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال
تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 Where are my keys? I ..... (can) find them.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (can't) لأن الجملة تعبر عن عدم القدرة على فعل شىء.

2 Can your little brother ..... (playing) an instrument?

- الإجابة الصحيحة (play) لأن (Can) نستخدم معها الفعل فى المصدر.

2 be able to:

(يكون قادرا أن)

Affirmative الإثبات

Subject الفاعل + am/is/are + able to + inf.

e.g: - I **am able to play** the piano. - We **are able to act** in that play.
- Nabil **is able to play** tennis.

Negative النفى

Subject الفاعل + am not/isn't/aren't + able to + inf.

e.g: - I **am not able to attend** the interview today.
- She **isn't able to sew** clothes.
- Ali and Nabila **aren't able to come** to the party.

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

Interrogative السؤال

Am/Is/Are + subject الفاعل + able to + inf. ....?

e.g: **A:** Is your brother able to ride a bike? **B:** No, he isn't.

A: Are you able to sew your clothes? **B:** Yes, I am.

Got it ?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. She ..... (able to) dance very well.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (is able to) لأن able to يأتى قبلها am/is/are والفاعل هنا She.

2. I ..... (not/able) to send an email.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (am not able) لوجود (to) والفاعل I.

3 know how to:

(يعرف كيف أن)

Affirmative الإثبات

Subject الفاعل + know/knows + how to + inf.

e.g: - I know how to paint scenery.

- Basmala knows how to write a script.

Negative النفى

Subject الفاعل + don't/doesn't + know how to + inf.

e.g: - They don't know how to play instruments.

- He doesn't know how to write an email.

Interrogative السؤال

Do/Does + subject الفاعل + know how to + inf.?

e.g: - Do you know how to paint scenery?

- Does your father know how to drive a car?

Got it ?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. ..... (Can) you know how to play the piano?

- الإجابة الصحيحة (Do) لأن know how to يأتى قبلها فى السؤال do أو does والفاعل هنا you.

2. My grandfather ..... (not/know) how to send an email.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (doesn't know) لأن الجملة منفية والفاعل هنا مفرد.

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

PRACTICE

Language Exercises

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. ..... you know how to do any types of art? الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣
   a) Are b) Can c) Do d) Have
2. She is able ..... her bedroom. Don't help her. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣
   a) to tidy b) tidying c) to tidying d) tidy
3. I ..... swim very quickly. I'm the best swimmer. أسيوط ٢٠٢٣
   a) able to b) don't c) can't d) can
4. Badr is ..... paint well. القليوبية ٢٠٢٣
   a) can b) able to c) know how to d) knows how
5. Do you know how ..... a computer? السويس ٢٠٢٣
   a) to use b) use c) using d) uses
6. I am ..... to start work tomorrow. سوهاج ٢٠٢٣
   a) can b) able c) able to d) know how
7. Does Omar ..... how to write a script?
   a) knew b) know c) knows d) knowing
8. My father knows how ..... his car himself. سوهاج ٢٠٢٣
   a) repair b) repairing c) to repairing d) to repair
9. I ..... lift this box - it's too heavy!
   a) doesn't know b) don't know c) isn't able to d) can't
10. Asmaa ..... to play chess.
    a) knows how b) know how c) knows d) know

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Can your brother ..... (taken) some photographs? بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣
2. You ..... (able to) leave this country with a passport. أسيوط ٢٠٢٣
3. Mariam doesn't know how ..... (write) an email. سوهاج ٢٠٢٣
4. After 2 years in China, he ..... (can't) speak Chinese well now.
5. ..... (they/able) to climb the mountain?
6. He ..... (not/know) how to read. He needs some help. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

D Skills

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.

1. Speaking

1. Expressions of description تعبيرات الوصف

famous مشهور/ancient أثرى/really good حقًا جيد/important هام/interesting شيق/
exciting مثير/boring ممل/normal عادى/really cool حقًا رائع/colourful زاهى الألوان/
busy مزدحم

2. Expressions of giving an opinion تعبيرات إعطاء الرأى

From my point of view من وجهة نظرى/I thought أعتقد/
It made me feel + صفة ..... جعلنى أشعر بـ/In my opinion, فى رأيى

3. Expressions of preference تعبيرات التفضيل

My favourite thing الشىء المفضل لى/I liked ... the most. أحببت..... الأكثر/
The best thing about أفضل شىء عن

4. Expressions of giving a recommendation تعبيرات إعطاء التوصية

I recommend أوصى بـ/It's a good idea to + inf. إنها فكرة جيدة

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialogue:

Osama and Islam are talking about their plan for the next weekend.

Osama : Where are you going to spend your weekend?
Islam : (1)..... .
Osama : Great! (2).....?
Islam : The Museum of Modern Egyptian Art is in Cairo.
Osama : Did you visit it before?
Islam : (3)..... .
Osama : What do you think about it?
Islam : (4).....?
Osama : (5).....
Islam : Sure. You can come with us.

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

2. Write it right

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.

How to write a review of a museum

كيف تكتب نقدًا عن متحف

- Egypt has many famous and interesting museums.
- There are new and ancient museums in Egypt, but I prefer the ancient ones.
- I visited (اسم المتحف) in (المحافظة).
- I liked it very much. You can see many arts there.
- The museum has (ما يتميز به المتحف).
- My favourite thing was (أفضل ما رأيت فى المتحف).
- If you want to take photos, it is a good idea to take a good camera, because the museum is quite dark.

Writing tips

Use the active voice
In English, readers prefer the SVO sentence sequence: **(Subject, Verb, Object.)**
This is the active voice. Passive sentences bore people.

استخدم المبنى للمعلوم:
يفضل قراء اللغة الإنجليزية استخدام المبنى للمعلوم حيث إن كثرة استخدام المبنى للمجهول تسبب الملل.

Example

A review of a museum

Egypt has many famous and interesting museums. There are new and ancient museums in Egypt, but I prefer the ancient ones. I visited the Textile Museum in Cairo. I liked it very much. You can see many arts there. The museum has lots of clothes from different times in history. I thought the clothes from Ancient Egypt were fantastic. You can know a lot of information about life in the past from the statues there. My favourite thing was the Islamic area where you can see different kinds of calligraphy. If you want to take photos, it is a good idea to take a good camera, because the museum is quite dark.

Check Point

Write a paragraph of about (90) words on:

"The Egyptian Museum of Modern Art"

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

TEST YOURSELF

Take a test

Unit 9 Lessons (1 & 2)

19.5

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

1. When will be the end-of-year show?
   a) Tomorrow. b) Next week.
   c) Next holiday. d) Next month.
2. What will the speaker do?
   a) Read the play. b) Sew costumes.
   c) Write scripts. d) Do make-up.
3. Who will sew costumes?
   a) All of them. b) Lara. c) The speaker. d) Mariam.
4. What will the show be about?
   a) A play. b) A film. c) A poem. d) A book.

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Emad and Ayman are talking about art.

القليوبية ٢٠٢٣

Emad : What subjects do you like, Ayman?
Ayman : (1)..... .
Emad : (2).....?
Ayman : Yes, I can draw and paint.
Emad : (3).....?
Ayman : I like to draw sceneries.
Emad : Do you like nature?
Ayman : (4)..... .
Emad : What else do you like to draw?
Ayman : (5)..... .

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A ..... is a period of hundred years.
   a) century b) country c) scenery d) centre
2. The students at school are ..... ready for the end-of-year party.
   a) acting b) taking c) getting d) making
3. Children like to wear ..... clothes. They are bright.
   a) colours b) colourful c) colour d) colouring
4. You don't have to pay for this pen. It's ..... . المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
   a) busy b) expensive c) cheap d) free
5. The Art Museum includes sculptures, ... and paintings. المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
   a) pottery b) poetry c) century d) calligraphy

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

6. Which restaurant do you ..... for me?
a) say b) tell c) order d) recommend

7. In summer, I go to my village and enjoy the ..... . الغربية ٢٠٢٣
a) mountains b) theatre c) scenery d) concert

8. He's amazing; he ..... speak five languages. المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
a) can't b) knows how to c) able to d) don't know how

9. She is seven years old, but she ..... to read yet. الأقصر ٢٠٢٣
a) can b) can't c) isn't able d) could

10. Don't worry about me, I can ..... care of myself.
a) take b) takes c) taking d) talked

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Dalia can ..... (doing) make-up very well. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣
2. Mona ..... (able) speak French. أسيوط ٢٠٢٣
3. He ..... (not/ know) how to play the piano. أسيوط ٢٠٢٣
4. ..... (be) your brothers able to help you with your homework?

5 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"A visit to a museum" دمياط ٢٠٢٣

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Challenging Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب

1. Do you think ..... able to write that report?
a) are you b) you are c) are they d) is he

2. I will bring the snacks, but you have to ..... the tickets.
a) buy for b) pay for c) pay d) paid

3. I ..... sleep. It is very hot here.
a) can b) know how c) can't d) able to

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

STUDY

Watch a video

Lessons 3 & 4

A Vocabulary

SB pages 26 - 28 | WB pages 86 & 87

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

Arabic music (n)	الموسيقى العربية	painter (n)	رسام/نقاش
blind (adj)	أعمى	proud (of) (adj)	فخور (بـ)
character (n)	شخصية	radio report (n)	تقرير إذاعى
deaf (adj)	أصم	radio reporter (n)	مراسل إذاعى
disabled (adj)	معاق	relationship (n)	علاقة
hug (ged) (v)	يعانق	reply (y ied) (v)	يرد
join (ed) (v)	ينضم إلى	rival (n)	خِصم/نِد/منافس
musician (n)	موسيقى/عازف	skill (n)	مهارة
newspaper (n)	جريدة/صحيفة	sign language (n)	لغة الإشارة
orchestra (n)	أوركسترا	wonder (ed) (v)	يتساءل/يتعجب

Additional Vocabulary

المفردات الإضافية

Braille (n)	طريقة برايل للمكفوفين	produce (d) (v)	ينتج
closely (adv)	عن قرب	recommendation (n)	توصية/ترشيح
honest (adj)	أمين	slope = ramp (n)	منحدر
imagine (d) (v)	يتخيل	traffic light (n)	إشارة المرور
patience (n)	الصبر	wheelchair (n)	كرسى متحرك

Check Point

Choose and complete: patience - hug - blind - deaf

1. Ahmed can't see. He is ..... .
2. He doesn't have the ..... to wait, so he goes alone.
3. Every time I see my grandmother, I ..... her.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

do › reading	يقوم بالقراءة	make › notes	يدون ملاحظات
give › a hug	يعانق/يحتضن	play › concerts	يعزف فى حفلات موسيقية
have › difficulties	لديه صعوبات	swap › roles	يتبادل الأدوار

Prepositions — حروف الجر

come into	يدخل	shout at	يصيح فى وجه
in a wheelchair	على كرسى متحرك	special school for	مدرسة خاصة لـ
on public transport	فى المواصلات العامة	with hands	باستخدام اليد

Check Point

Choose and complete: at - in - plays - makes

1. My sister always ..... notes while the teacher is explaining.
2. My disabled friend sits ..... a wheelchair.
3. He is a musician. He ..... concerts from time to time.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر.

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs — تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	P.P.	Present	Past simple	P.P.
hide يختبئ/يخفى	hid	hidden	throw يرمى	threw	thrown

Words and Opposites — الكلمات وعكسها

Word — الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym) — عكسها
classical قديم/كلاسيكى	modern حديث
frightened خائف	brave شجاع
strange غريب	usual عادى
international عالمى/دولى	local محلى
public عام (للجمهور)	private خاص (ملكية)
surprising مدهش/مفاجئ	normal عادى

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا
لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية

1 Adjectives ending in (-ing) and (-ed):

الصفات المنتهية بـ (ing) أو (ed)

نستخدم الصفات المنتهية بـ (ing) عند وصف مسبب الصفة للآخرين.

نستخدم الصفات المنتهية بـ (ed) عند وصف الشعور بالصفة.

- The boys are wearing masks in front of the girls. The boys are frightening and the girls are frightened.

2 Musical instruments

الآلات الموسيقية

cello	التشيلو	trombone	الترومبون
clarinet	كلارينيت	trumpet	بوق
flute	الفلوت	violin	الكمان
piano	البيانو		

الآلات الموسيقية يأتى قبلها (the) إذا جاءت بغرض العزف/الاستماع/التعلم

- She is able to play the piano very well.
- My father bought me a piano.

3 special

خاص/مميز (لفئة من الناس ولكن ليست ملكًا لهم)

private

خاص (ذو ملكية خاصة بشخص)

- He goes to a special school for the blind.
- That's my private Facebook account.

4 unable

غير قادر على فعل شىء معين

the disabled

متحدى الإعاقة (اسم جمع)

- My friend is unable to use the computer.
- These seats are specially for the disabled.

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I love skydiving. It's ..... .
   a) interested b) amazed c) amazing d) interests
2. I'd rather not talk about it; it's a ..... matter between me and my mum.
   a) special b) private c) common d) ordinary
3. She earns a lot of money by playing ..... violin.
   a) a b) the c) any d) an
4. It is often very difficult for the ..... to find jobs.
   a) abled b) unable c) disabled d) able

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Definitions — التعريفات

blind	أعمى	not able to see
deaf	أصم	not able to hear
disabled	معاق	not able to use parts of the body in the way other people can
hide	يختبئ/يخفى	go to a place where you cannot be seen or found, or put something in a place where it cannot be seen or found
hug	يعانق	put your arms around someone and hold them closely, usually because you love them
wonder	يتعجب	think about something and want to know why it is true

Words and Synonyms — الكلمات ومرادفها

Word — الكلمة		Synonym (Meaning) — مرادفها	
classical	قديم/كلاسيكى	traditional	تقليدى
public	عام	common	شائع

Suffix اللاحقة

Word — الكلمة		Suffix — اللاحقة	Function — الوظيفة	The new word — الكلمة الجديدة	
music (n)	موسيقى	-ian	تحويل الاسم لاسم فاعل	musician (n)	موسيقى/عازف
paint (v)	يرسم	-er	تحويل الفعل لاسم فاعل	painter (n)	رسام

Similar Spelling - Different Meaning

هذا الجزء يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المتشابهة فى الهجاء ولكن مختلفة فى المعنى.

Word — الكلمة		Similar word — الكلمة المشابهة	
roles	أدوار	rules	قواعد
wonder	يتساءل/يتعجب	wander	يتجول

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

B Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-listening question: - How can the blind read?

Lesson 3

Listen to a radio report about the Al Nour Wal Amal Chamber Orchestra. What is special about the orchestra?

SB page 26

Radio Reporter: Today, I'm visiting a very special(1) school in Cairo. This is a music school for girls. All the students study their normal(2) subjects in the morning and then practise their instruments(3) in the afternoon. Many of the students at this school join an orchestra called the *Al Nour Wal Amal Chamber Orchestra*. This orchestra(4) plays concerts(5) in Australia, Germany, China and all around the world. What is most special about the school and the orchestra is that all the students here are blind(6)!

The orchestra plays international(7) classical(8) and Arabic music. All the students learn to read the music using Braille, a type of reading you can do with your hands. Then they have to remember the music because they can't read and play at the same time. Let's go to meet some of the musicians(9).

(1) خاص/مميز
(2) عادى/طبيعى
(3) آلات موسيقية
(4) مجموعة العازفين
(5) حفلات موسيقية
(6) كفيف
(7) دولى/عالمى
(8) كلاسيكى
(9) موسيقيون

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

orchestra /ɔːrkɪstrə/ musician /mjuːzɪʃən/

Listen and choose the correct words.

WB page 86

The *Al Nour Wal Amal Chamber Orchestra* is at a school for **blind** girls in Cairo. Eman Badr is one of the **musicians**. She is able to play the **violin** very well. She started **playing** when she was six. Eman became blind when she was two years old. She likes playing in the **orchestra** because she loves music and being with her friends. Recently, she visited Oman and France with the orchestra.

I think the orchestra is **amazing**. It must be very difficult to **read** music with your hands and then remember it. I would like to go to one of their **concerts**.

Post-listening question: - What is special about the orchestra?

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

Pre-reading question:

- What's your favourite story?

Lesson 4

Read the story and check your answers to Exercise 1. SB page 28

Little Women

By Louisa May Alcott

Meg, Beth and Amy were sewing when Jo came into the room with a newspaper(1). She sat down and started to read it.

"Anything interesting?" asked Meg.

"Oh, only a story," Jo replied.

"What's it called?" asked Beth. She wondered(2) why Jo was hiding(3) behind the newspaper.

"It's called *The Rival Painters*," said Jo.

"Why don't you read it to us?" asked Amy.

Jo started to read it very quickly. The girls listened carefully. The story was very sad.

"I liked it," said Meg at the end. She was crying(4) a little. "Isn't it strange that the characters(5) are called two of our favourite names?"

Beth saw Jo's face. "Who wrote the story?" she asked.

Jo jumped up, threw the paper down and said, "Your sister!"

"You?" shouted Meg. "It's very good!" said Amy.

"I knew it! I knew it! Oh, I am so proud!" said Beth, hugging(6) her sister.

(1) جريدة
(2) يتساءل
(3) تختبئ
(4) يبكى
(5) شخصيات
(6) يعانق

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

rival /raɪvəl/ character /kærɪktəʳ/

Post-reading questions:

1. Why do you think Jo reads the story before she tells them she wrote it?
2. Why does Beth say she is "so proud"?

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering Understanding Applying Analysing Evaluating Creating

Practise more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Eman plays the violin in a/an ..... . الدقهلية ٢٠٢٢
   a) character b) orchestra c) match d) team
2. His brother was born ....., he couldn't see. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
   a) deaf b) dumb c) blind d) healthy
3. My mother ..... me when I do something good. المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
   a) punishes b) hits c) hugs d) drives
4. I'm very ..... of my little brother. He always comes first. المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
   a) proud b) happy c) interested d) bored
5. The little girl ..... when the dog frightened her. الغربية ٢٠٢٣
   a) laughed b) hugged c) cried d) felt
6. A musician needs special ..... to play music. القليوبية ٢٠٢٣
   a) skills b) cartoons c) laptops d) mobiles
7. I found an article about technology in the ..... yesterday. دمياط ٢٠٢٢
   a) newspaper b) report c) advert d) skill
8. You can use ..... transport to go to school to save money.
   a) common b) special c) private d) public
9. Braille is a type of reading we can do with our ..... . بورسعيد ٢٠٢٣
   a) hands b) feet c) ears d) eyes
10. A ..... is someone who plays against you in a game.
    a) painter b) rival c) musician d) reporter
11. Try to help ..... people by solving the problems they have. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣
    a) sleepy b) lazy c) disabled d) brave
12. The teacher asked two students to ..... roles for the school play.
    a) swap b) play c) give d) join
13. Good ..... make us feel happy and loved.
    a) cartons b) difficulties c) roles d) relationships
14. Ali ..... some difficulties, but he was able to succeed. أسيوط ٢٠٢٣
    a) took b) gave c) hid d) had
15. A radio ..... is someone who writes and delivers news stories on the radio.
    a) wait b) waiter c) report d) reporter
16. It's not polite to shout ..... someone.
    a) on b) at c) in d) for

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

C Skills

Write it right

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.

1. How to write about a person you're proud of

كيف تكتب عن شخص تفخر به

Example

A person I am proud of

Of all my family, my mother is the person I am proud of most. She is in her forties. She looks much younger than her age with short hair and a beautiful face. At work, she is respected and admired by all of her friends. Furthermore, she is a very good cook. I am really proud of her. She often spends her free time cooking delicious dishes for us, which makes everyone in my family happy. What's more, my mother is an excellent adviser. She often gives me suggestions and a lot of advice to help me with my problems. She is not only my mother, but also she is also my good example to follow. For all these reasons, I always love and take pride in my mother.

2. How to write a film review

كيف تكتب نقد فيلم

To : ghada@student.com
From : dina@student.com
Subject : A review of a film

Dear Ghada,

I hope you're well. I'd like to tell you about my favourite film. In my free time, I like watching movies. I love all kinds of movies like American, Indian and Moroccan movies. I watched many films. However, the best movie I watched was "*Wonder Woman*". It came out on June 2nd, 2017. The director is Patty Jenkins. Before she was *Wonder Woman*, she was Diana, princess of the Amazons. I think Wonder Woman was amazing. I thought the action was exciting and my favourite thing was when she finally discovered her full power. I recommend this film if you like excitement and action. Write soon.

Yours,
Dina

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

1 Read the following, then answer the questions:

القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

The Al Nour Wal Amal Chamber Orchestra is a very special musical group from Egypt. They are a group of good musicians who play beautiful music together. What makes this orchestra special is that all of the musicians are women, and many of them are blind or have difficulty seeing. They play different instruments like the violin, cello and piano. The orchestra has been ***performing*** for a long time, practising their music and learning new songs. **They** have even travelled to different countries to share their music with people around the world. The Al Nour Wal Amal Chamber Orchestra shows us that anyone can follow their dreams and do something amazing, no matter what difficulties they may meet.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the passage? .....
2. What does the underlined pronoun "**They**" refer to? .....
3. What do you think makes this orchestra special? .....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The musicians play the ..... in the Al Nour Wal Amal Chamber Orchestra.
   a) violin b) cello c) piano d) all of these
5. They travelled to ..... countries to play their music.
   a) no b) many c) very few d) two
6. The word "***performing***" can be the same meaning as ..... .
   a) eating b) crying c) travelling d) playing

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We have a number of ..... players in our team. They play in other countries.
   a) special b) private c) international d) local
2. Tour guides need to know English to communicate ..... foreigners. المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
   a) on b) by c) in d) with
3. Small animals ..... to protect themselves from dangers.
   a) hide b) throw c) wonder d) hurt
4. My father likes to wear a suit on ..... occasions. القليوبية ٢٠٢٣
   a) private b) special c) general d) public
5. The ..... is my favourite musical instrument. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) cello b) musician c) sculpture d) pottery
6. When you read a book, you can imagine what the ..... look like.
   a) reports b) characters c) skills d) rules

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

7. My teacher asked me to ..... notes of the important points.
a) watch b) see c) make d) do

8. ..... you able to help us with music? قنا ٢٠٢٣
a) Do b) Will c) Are d) Can

9. Do you know how ..... this bike? الغربية ٢٠٢٣
a) to ride b) riding c) ride d) to riding

10. Hany ..... swim, but he can fly a kite. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣
a) hasn't b) don't c) isn't d) can't

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. ..... (Are) you know how to climb a mountain? دمياط ٢٠٢٣
2. I can ..... (playing) the guitar. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣
3. Which musical instrument ..... (you/can) play?
4. Manar ..... (not/know) how to do make up.

4 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"A nice film you watched"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Challenging Questions

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب

1. I'm sorry, I ..... (able) to join you.
2. My father is a good man and I'm so proud ..... (of) be his son.
3. She ..... (can) do any sum of her maths homework. She is very sad.

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

STUDY

Watch a video

Lessons 5 & 6

SB pages 29 & 31 | WB pages 88 & 90

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

action (n)	عمل/أداء	information (n)	معلومات
actor (n)	ممثل	main (adj)	أساسى/رئيسى
actress (n)	ممثلة	offer (ed) (v)	يعرض
adventure (n)	مغامرة	request (ed)(v/n)	يطلب/طلب
dinosaur (n)	ديناصور	reviewer (n)	ناقد
escape (d) (v)	يهرب	scary (adj)	مخيف
event (n)	حدث	theme park (n)	متنزه/مدينة ترفيهية

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

amazing (adj)	رائع/مدهش	schoolboy (n)	تلميذ
British (adj)	بريطانى	star (n)	نجمة/نجم سينمائى
discussion (n)	مناقشة	summary (n)	ملخص
nearly (adv)	تقريبًا	table tennis (n)	تنس طاولة
park (n/v)	حديقة/يركن سيارة	tower (n)	برج
reason (n)	سبب	view (n)	وجهة نظر/منظر
recycle (d) (v)	يعيد تدوير	writer (n)	كاتب

Check Point

Choose and complete: recycle - actress - request - actor

1. Nelly Karim is a great ..... .
2. The Japanese ..... more than half of their waste paper.
3. You should ..... more help from your parents if you feel worried.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

do	calligraphy	يؤدى فن حسن الخط	make	films	يصنع أفلامًا
present	an opinion	يقدم رأيًا		pottery	يصنع الفخار
stop	fires	يوقف الحرائق		sculptures	يصنع المنحوتات

Prepositions — حروف الجر

ask for	يطلب	invite to + شىء/مكان	يدعو إلى
instead of	بدلاً من	on the radio	فى الراديو

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

Check Point

Choose and complete: do - on - make - to

1. He wants to be a famous star and ..... films.
2. My father likes to listen to music ..... the radio.
3. Shahenda's cousins invited her ..... stay with them for a few weeks.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر.

Words and Opposites — الكلمات وعكسها

Word — الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym) — عكسها
die — يموت	live — يعيش
land — يهبط	take off — تقلع (الطائرة)

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ

Definitions — التعريفات

action — عمل/أداء	the things that happen in a film
escape — يهرب	to leave a place that you should stay in
review — نقد	to present a summary, opinion and recommendation of a film, book or play
theme park — متنزه/مدينة ترفيهية	a large park with machines to ride on, restaurants, etc.

Words and Synonyms — الكلمات ومرادفها

Word — الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning) — مرادفها
boring — ممل	dull — ممل
die — يموت	pass away — يموت

Suffix اللاحقة

Word — الكلمة	Suffix — اللاحقة	Function — الوظيفة	The new word — الكلمة الجديدة
act (v) — يمثل/يؤدى	-ion	تحويل الفعل لاسم	action (n) — عمل/أداء
review (v) — ينقد	-er	تحويل الفعل لاسم فاعل	reviewer (n) — ناقد

هذا الجزء يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المتشابهة فى الهجاء ولكن مختلفة فى المعنى.

Similar Spelling - Different Meaning

Word — الكلمة	Similar word — الكلمة المشابهة
park — حديقة/ يركن سيارة	bark — ينبح الكلب

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

B Reading & Listening Skills

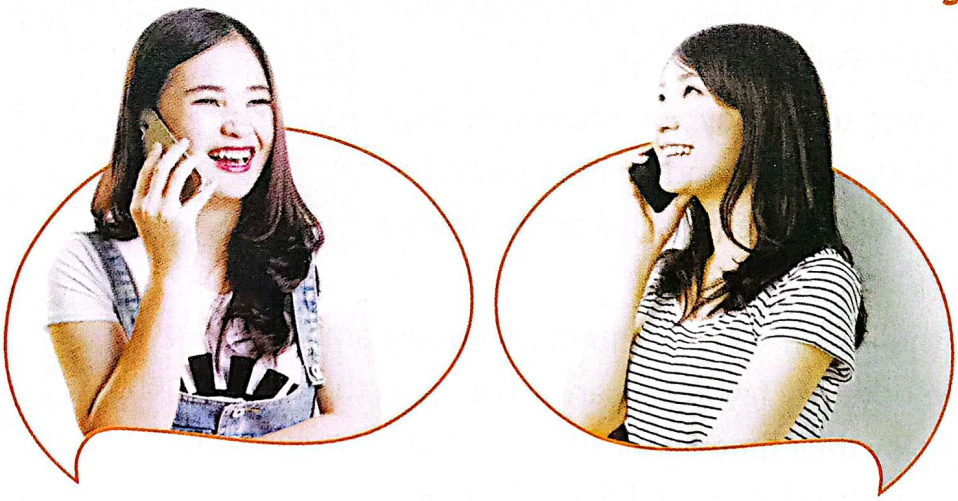
Lesson 5

Pre-listening question:

- What kind of films do you like watching?

Listen to a telephone conversation between two friends and complete the notes.

SB page 29



Rawia Hi, Warda!

Warda Hi, Rawia, how's it going?

Rawia Fine thanks, how are you?

Warda Yeah, I'm good. I was wondering if you would like to come to watch a film at my house tonight.

Rawia Yeah, cool, I'd love to. Which film?

Warda I've got the film of a famous book: would you like to watch Little Women?

Rawia Oh, yes please – I love the book! Shall I bring some drinks or snacks?

Warda I have lots of snacks but not much to drink. Could you bring some fruit juice?

Rawia Of course, no problem. What time should I come?

Warda About 7 pm?

Rawia Great! See you then.

Post-listening question:

- What's Warda inviting Rawia for?

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

Pre-reading question:

- What type of books do you like to read?

Put this review of a book into the correct order. WB page 89

A review of Lord of the Flies

Lord of the Flies is an adventure story(1). It is by the British writer(2) William Golding.

It is about some schoolboys who have to live on an island(3) after their plane lands in the sea and the pilot(4) dies(5). How will the boys live on the island, and will they escape(6)?

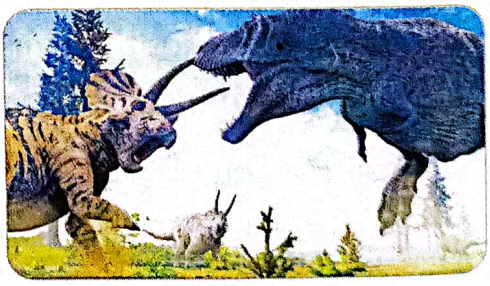
I thought the action(7) was exciting and many amazing things happen to the boys. My favourite part was early in the story, when the children enjoy their time on the island. But in my opinion, some of the children are horrible and I did not like them.

I recommend the book because it makes you think about what it is like to live only with other children, but it is not a very happy story.

(1) قصة مغامرة
(2) كاتب
(3) جزيرة
(4) طيار
(5) يموت
(6) يهرب
(7) أداء / عمل

Read the film review. Does the writer like the film or not? SB page 30

A review of Jurassic World



Jurassic World is an adventure film(1). The stars(2) of the film are Chris Pratt and Bryce Dallas Howard. It is about a theme park(3) where scientists(4) have helped dinosaurs to live again! Then some of the dinosaurs escape. What will happen?

I thought the action was exciting and my favourite thing was the scary(5) dinosaurs; they look very real. But, in my opinion the story isn't very interesting or new. I recommend this film if you like exciting and scary films, but not if you want a good story.

(1) فيلم مغامرة
(2) نجوم الفيلم
(3) متنزه/مدينة ترفيهية
(4) علماء
(5) مخيف

Post-reading question:

- What type of film is "*Jurassic World*"?

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering Understanding Applying Analysing Evaluating Creating

Practise more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The teacher asked us to give a/an ..... to the story as it's too long. الغربية ٢٠٢٢
   a) presentation b) summary c) introduction d) action
2. The actor became a ..... after that famous film. دمياط ٢٠٢٢
   a) star b) builder c) writer d) translator
3. To ..... means to leave a place that you should stay in. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) paint b) escape c) sew d) review
4. Tonight's programme on TV will look back at the main ..... of the year.
   a) reports b) events c) articles d) interviews
5. Diving under water looks a bit ..... . أسيوط ٢٠٢٣
   a) amazed b) bored c) scared d) scary
6. A ..... is a large park with machines to ride on, restaurants, etc. دمياط ٢٠٢٣
   a) theme park b) safari park c) concert d) beach
7. We should ..... things such as bags, toys, and other things to use them again. أسيوط ٢٠٢٣
   a) cycle b) recycle c) throw d) go
8. There's a great ..... from the top of the tower. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣
   a) review b) script c) park d) view
9. A ..... is a tall narrow building. الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٣
   a) tower b) tour c) pyramids d) mountains
10. He ..... me a glass of juice, but I didn't drink it because I wasn't thirsty.
    a) guessed b) offered c) escaped d) showed
11. The plane ..... safely and all people were happy. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣
    a) died b) fell c) threw d) landed
12. I like watching ..... films. They are very exciting.
    a) adventure b) amazed c) boring d) interested
13. If the weather is nice, we will have a ..... in the park. دمياط ٢٠٢٣
    a) picnic b) century c) voyage d) flight
14. "....." mean the things that happen in a film. دمياط ٢٠٢٣
    a) Ideas b) Actions c) Articles d) Views
15. My friend is very sad because his grandfather ..... yesterday.
    a) died b) lived c) stayed d) slept
16. The police told my father not to ..... his car here.
    a) bark b) break c) park d) brake

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

C Skills

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.

Speaking

1 Invitation. الدعوة

A: Hi Nader. I was wondering if you would like to come to my cousin's house.
B: Yes, I would love to.

A: Would you like to play table tennis?
B: Yes, please. / **B:** No, thanks.

2 Offer. العرض

A: Shall I bring some table tennis balls?
B: No, he's got those. / **B:** Yes, please.

3 Request. الطلب

A: Could you bring some food? **B:** Of course, I'll bring some sandwiches.

4 Asking for information. طلب معلومات

A: What time should I come? **B:** At 10 p.m.

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialogue: الغربية ٢٠٢٣

Amr is inviting Said to his house to listen to some music.

Amr : Hi, Said. I was wondering if you were busy tonight.
Said : Hi, Amr. No, I am not busy. Why?
Amr : (1).....?
Said : Yes, that sounds cool. Shall I bring anything?
Amr : (2)..... . Could you bring your guitar?
Said : (3)..... ! What about bringing some sandwiches with me?
Amr : No, thanks. I've got enough sandwiches.
Said : (4).....?
Amr : At about 8 pm.
Said : Okay! I'll be there on time. (5).....!

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Ayman is inviting Nader to attend his birthday party. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣

Ayman : Hello, Nader. It's my birthday party tomorrow.

Nader : (1)..... .

Ayman : (2).....?

Nader : Yes, I'll come to the party. (3).....?

Ayman : It starts at 8 o'clock.

Nader : Who will come to the party?

Ayman : (4)..... .

Nader : What present would you like for your birthday?

Ayman : (5)..... .

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I went to a theme ..... and rode the big wheel. It was exciting. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) bark b) park c) break d) brake
2. What's the ..... for coming late today? القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) reason b) season c) sense d) point
3. The thief ..... from prison yesterday. سوهاج ٢٠٢٢
   a) swam b) stayed c) escaped d) reached
4. The teacher asked me to ..... my opinion in front of the class.
   a) land b) present c) do d) hit
5. I had a/an ..... from my friend to his birthday. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٣
   a) request b) invitation c) offer d) book
6. She wants to write well, so she decided to ..... calligraphy.
   a) make b) do c) have d) give
7. When does the plane to Paris take .....?
   a) in b) off c) of d) from

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

8. ..... you able to paint the scenery? الغربية ٢٠٢٣

a) Do b) Are c) Have d) Can

9. She ..... know how to cook at all.

a) isn't b) hasn't c) doesn't d) can't

10. Maged and Rayan are bad actors. They ..... to act.

a) are able b) aren't able c) can d) know how

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. My mother can ..... (making) a cake. سوهاج ٢٠٢٣
2. Nader ..... (know) how to drive a car.
3. Nabil and Abdullah ..... (can) go out tonight because they have a lot of homework.
4. Magda ..... (able) play tennis. دمياط ٢٠٢٢

4 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"A story you read" الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Challenging Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب

1. I don't know how much money he has. It's ..... 100 pounds.

a) near b) nearly c) nearby d) nearest

2. You shouldn't be afraid. The film isn't ..... .

a) scary b) frightened c) afraid d) feared

3. I read a/an ..... of the book in the local newspaper. It was good.

a) article b) email c) view d) review

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

Review On Unit 9

Vocabulary

act (ed)	يمثل
actor	ممثل
actress	ممثلة
artist	فنان
blind	أعمى
calligraphy	فن الخط
century	قرن (١٠٠ عام)
character	شخصية
concert hall	قاعة حفلات موسيقية
costumes	ملابس خاصة بمناسبة
deaf	أصم
disabled	معاق
hug (ged)	يعانق
musical instrument	آلة موسيقية
portrait	صورة فنية للوجه
pottery	فخار/خزف
radio reporter	مراسل إذاعى
scenery	منظر طبيعى
script	نص كتابى/سيناريو
sculpture	النحت
skill	مهارة
statue	تمثال
theatre	مسرح
theme park	متنزه/مدينة ترفيهية
wonder (ed)	يتساءل/يتعجب

Language

Ability:

Affirmative:

Subject + can + inf.

Subject + am/is/are + able to + inf.

Subject + know/ knows + how to + inf.

- I can **paint** scenery if you want.
- We are able to **act** in that play.
- I know how to **paint** scenery.

Negative:

Subject + can't + inf.

Subject + am/is/are + not + able to + inf.

Subject + doesn't/don't + know + how to + inf.

- Sama can't **play** chess.
- She isn't able to **sew** clothes.
- He doesn't know how to **write** an email.

Interrogative:

Can + **subject** + inf. ....?

Am/Is/Are + **subject** + able to + inf. ....?

Do/Does + **subject** + know how to + inf.?

- Can Mohamed **swim** well?
- Is your brother able to **ride** a bike?
- Do you know how to **paint** scenery?

Skills

1. **Expressions of description:**
   - Egypt is famous for its ancient art.
2. **Expressions of giving an opinion:**
   - From my point of view, the artists were really good.
3. **Expressions of preferences:**
   - My favourite thing in the museum was a painting called *Al Madina* by Mahmoud Said.
4. **Expressions of giving a recommendation:**
   - I recommend **looking** at the clothes from other countries.
5. **Invitation:**
   - Hi Nader. I was wondering if you would like to **come** to my cousin's house.
6. **Offer:**
   - Shall I bring some table tennis balls?
7. **Request:**
   - Could you bring some food?
8. **Asking for information:**
   - What time should I come?

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

Question Bank

Al-Adwaa Test On Unit 9

24

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

1. What is the name of the film?
   a) Wonder Woman. b) Spiderman.
   c) Jurassic World. d) Batman.
2. What kind of film is it?
   a) Adventure. b) Comic.
   c) Drama. d) Historical.
3. What escaped from the park?
   a) Birds. b) People.
   c) Scientists. d) Dinosaurs.
4. Why did the scientists help the dinosaurs?
   a) To die. b) To live again.
   c) To escape. d) To sleep.

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Helal is inviting Mazen to watch the match with him.

Mazen : Hello, Helal. How are things?
Helal : Fine, Mazen. (1)..... ?
Mazen : Yes, I'd love to. Why?
Helal : (2)..... .
Mazen : Shall I bring food with me?
Helal : (3)..... . We've got enough food here. Could you bring your tablet?
Mazen : Of course. (4)..... ?
Helal : At seven thirty.
Mazen : Great! Shall I bring my camera?
Helal : (5)..... . See you then.

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions: بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣

One day, my wife saw a mouse running across the kitchen floor. She was afraid of it. She ran out of the house, got on a bus and went down to the shops. She bought a mouse **trap**. The shopkeeper said to her, "Put some cheese in it and you will catch the mouse." She went home. She looked at the fridge, but she couldn't find any cheese in **it**. She cut a picture of cheese out of a magazine and put that in the trap. When she went to the kitchen the next morning, there was a picture of a mouse beside the picture of the cheese.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the best title of the text? .....
2. What do you think of the woman? .....
3. What does the underlined pronoun "**it**" refer to? .....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The word "**trap**" means a machine that helps people to ..... mice.
   a) help b) catch c) eat d) feed
5. The wife saw the mouse in the ..... .
   a) bedroom b) kitchen c) living room d) bathroom
6. She cut ..... of cheese out of a magazine.
   a) some books b) a type c) a kind d) a picture

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Do you have any tickets for the .....? I like music very much. الغربية ٢٠٢٣
   a) hall b) concert c) cinema d) theatre
2. The children all wore funny ..... for the family party. سوهاج ٢٠٢٣
   a) scripts b) customs c) costumes d) reviews
3. A firefighter is the person who ..... fires. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣
   a) keeps b) saves c) stops d) makes
4. If a person is ....., he/she can't hear.
   a) deaf b) blind c) clam d) clever

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

5. Lara always gives her grandmother a big ..... when she sees her. WB

a) hug b) huge c) hide d) hall

6. She invited me ..... her wedding.

a) by b) in c) to d) for

7. My little brother started to ..... after he fell and hurt his hand. WB

a) carry b) cry c) fry d) dry

8. How ..... you able to do that? القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

a) do b) can c) are d) was

9. Does he ..... to plant a tree?

a) can b) is able c) know how d) knows how

10. I am afraid of the water because I ..... swim. سوهاج ٢٠٢٣

a) can b) not able to c) can't d) know

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. She ..... (able) to read music by using Braille. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

2. **A:** ..... (Are) you speak English? **B:** Sure, I can speak English. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢

3. My sister ..... (not/know) how to design apps.

4. My brother can ..... (running) very fast. He won the last marathon.

E Writing

6 Write an email of NINETY (90) words to your friend about "Someone you're proud of". Your name is Salwa and your email address is salwa@student.com. Your friend's email address is retal@gmail.com.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

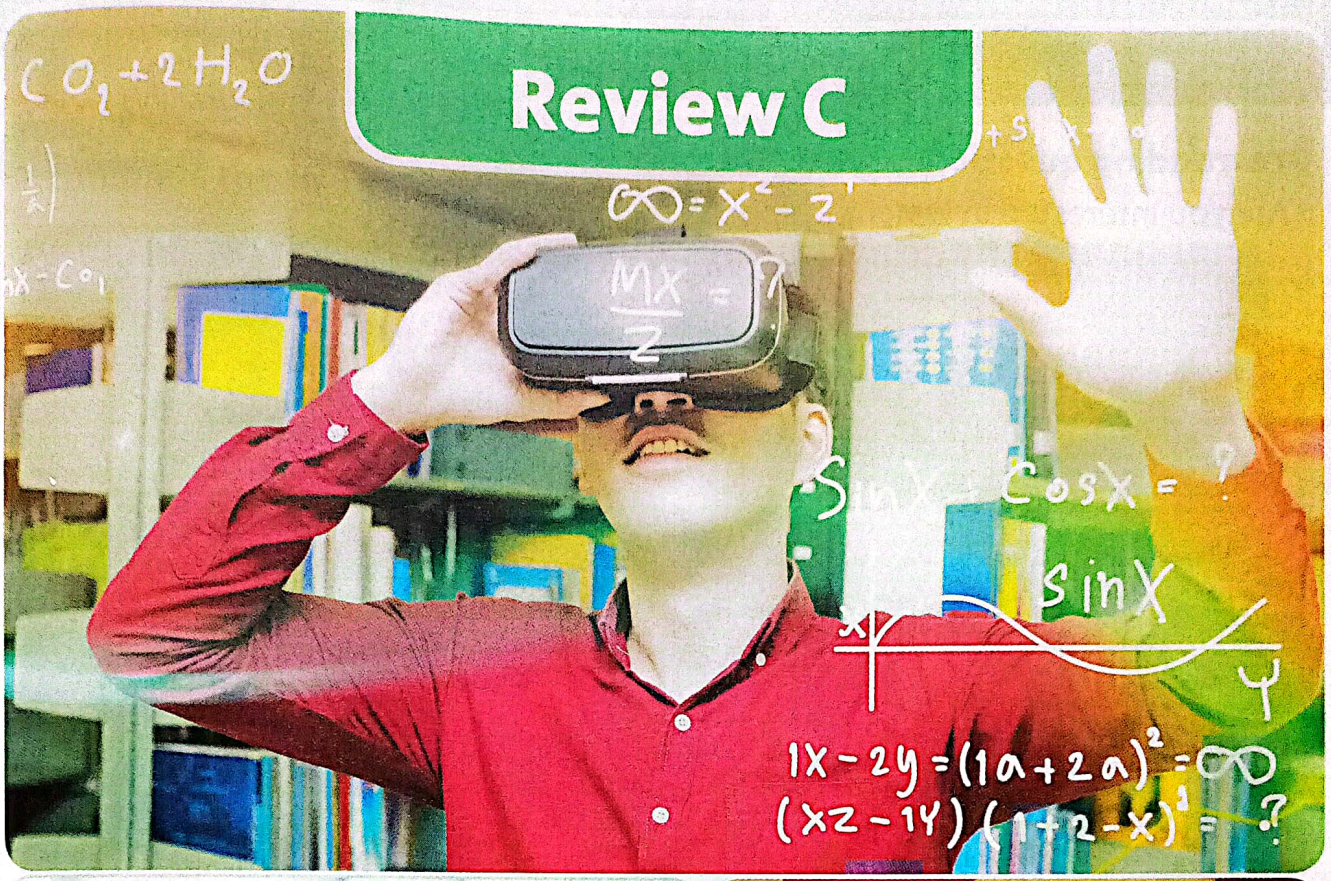
.....

Assess your progress ★ ★ ★ ★ ★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

Review C



Units 7, 8 & 9

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

Review C

Lesson 1

Pre-reading question:

- Are you interested in watching sports? What's your favourite?

Read the medical advice and complete the sentences with should.

SB page 32

Medical advice for people at the 2021 Handball World Championship

- Stand 1.5 metres from other people.
- Enter and leave the stadium through the correct doors.
- Take a test for COVID 19 every 72 hours.
- Only players do not need to wear a mask.
- Only online interviews after games.

There will be **a lot of** players at the 2021 Men's Handball World Championships. The Championship's medical committee want to make sure that all the people at the competition **are able to** play together safely. For that reason, they want only **a few** people to use the doors to the stadium at the same time. People who are not playing need to wear a mask. You can find **a lot of** these just outside the stadium and they are free to use. All players should **know how to** get a COVID-19 test every 72 hours.

Post-reading question:

- Why should you stand 1.5 metres from other people?

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

Pre-reading question:

- Who is William Shakespeare? Have you read any of his plays?

Complete the review with these words. SB page 32

Review of Julius Caesar

Last night, I went to see Julius Caesar. It's a **play** by the English writer William Shakespeare, but it's about a Roman ruler. Caesar's **costume** made him look very important! The **scenery** was amazing and it really looked like Ancient Rome.

In my opinion, the story is very sad and I cried at the end. From my point of view, the actor who played Caesar was the best, but all the **acting** was very good. I will never forget this play, but there wasn't much **action**; it was mostly talking. And it was three hours long! If you watch a Shakespeare play, you should know that the language of the **script** is different to modern English so it can be difficult to understand, but I liked it.

Post-reading question:

- What did the writer like about the play? What didn't he/she like?

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

Pre-listening question:

- What do you do on your mother's birthday?

Listen to two sisters cooking an omelette. How long should they cook it for?

WB page 91

Amal It's Mum's birthday. Let's make her some breakfast.

Dalida That's a good idea, Amal. We could make her a fruit salad.

Amal I think she prefers salty food to sweet food, Dalida. What about a cheese omelette?

Dalida Omelette is a good idea. Would you like to get the butter from the fridge, Amal?

Amal OK.

Dalida Shall I beat the eggs? I like doing that. How many eggs should I use?

Amal Thanks, Dalida. If there are four of us, you should use eight eggs.

Dalida Do you know how to chop the cheese, Amal?

Amal Of course.

Dalida It's a good idea to chop the cheese really small. I'll heat some butter in the pan and pour in the eggs.

Amal How long should it cook for?

Dalida We'll leave it for a few minutes.

Amal It looks really nice. I'd like a lot, please!

Dalida We can all have a little. Mum will be very pleased!

Post-listening question:

- What do we need to make an omelette?

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

Pre-listening question:

- What kinds of food do you like?

Listen to Heba and Sara talking about food. What do they spend too much time doing?

SB page 33

Heba What's your favourite food, Sara? I like fruit, such as a nice juicy mango! I like fruit more than anything else … and the fruit I like best of all … It's difficult to decide.

Sara I like fruit, too Heba, but my favourite food is a nice, fresh falafel. There is a food stall near my house where they are very good, and my mum sometimes cooks them, too.

Heba What things do you know how to cook, Sara? I can make omelettes and salads, but I don't know how to make many things.

Sara I know how to make cakes. My grandmother taught me. I love making cakes, but I eat too many of them. I should eat more fruit.

Heba Yes, I eat too many cakes, too! I don't do enough exercise. I have a sports lesson at school once a week, and I go for a walk a few times a month with my cousins, but that's all. What about you?

Sara I play tennis twice a week and I run with my father at the weekend, so I do enough exercise, but I often spend too much time playing computer games in the evenings, so I go to bed late.

Heba Yes, I spend too much time online in the evenings, too. Let's try to do more exercise next week, Sara!

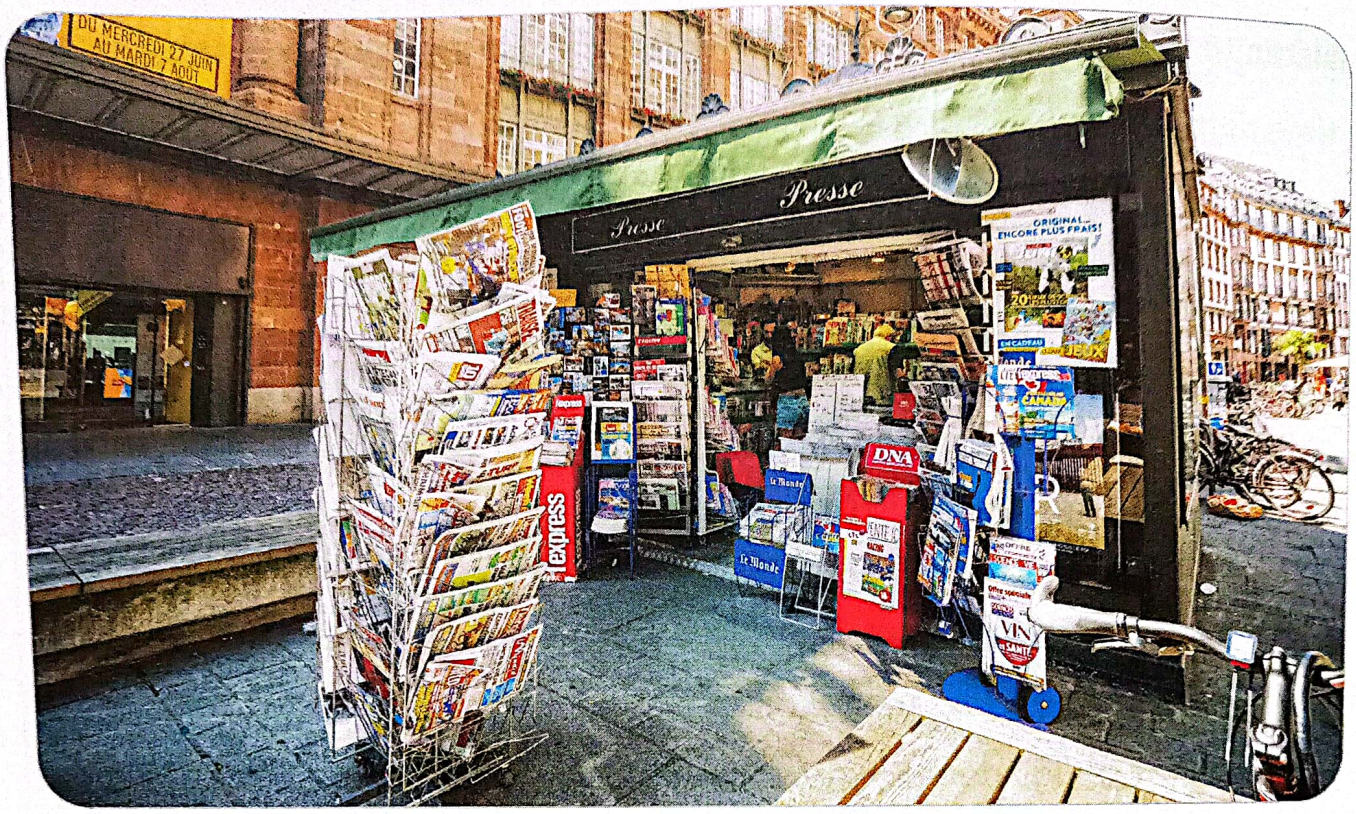
Sara Good idea, Heba!

Post-listening question:

- How often does Sara play tennis?

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

Read and complete the reviews with these words:



(1) The people look like they are from Ancient Egypt because the **costumes** are very good, but the person who painted the **scenery** did not know how to paint!

It was very long, and I didn't like the music. I wouldn't **recommend** this.

(2) The articles are always really interesting to read and they have fantastic **photographs**, too. I really like the **cartoons** because they make me laugh!

If you want to learn about the world today, you should **buy** this!

(3) From my **point of view**, this is the best place to find out about life in the last century. There are interesting **sculptures** of people and some amazing old technology.

I loved the big, old **phones**!

(4) The story was very slow and there was very little **action**. I didn't really enjoy it because it **made** me feel sad. The **best** thing about it was learning what it is like to be blind. That must be very difficult.

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

Unit 10

We are what we wear

Objectives of the unit

Reading	An article about Egyptian clothes now and in the past; a blog about what teenagers wear; a text about linen and cotton; an advert
Writing	An advert to sell something
Listening	People talking about their clothes; a conversation in a clothes shop
Speaking	Discussing and describing clothes; shopping for clothes
Language	Adjective order; one, ones
Life Skills	Respect for diversity

Tapescript

WB تشير لأسئلة كتاب التدريبات SB تشير لأسئلة كتاب الطالب

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

STUDY

Watch a video

Lessons 1 & 2

SB pages 34 - 37 | WB pages 93 & 94

A Vocabulary

- قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيدًا لدرجة الإتقان حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.
- قم باختبار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الذهاب لملحق التقويم وتسميع الكلمات الخاصة بالدرسين.

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

climate (n)	مناخ	relaxed (adj)	مسترخٍ/مستريح
dress (v)	يلبس/يرتدى	sheet (n)	ملاية
jewellery (n)	مجوهرات		

Items of clothing قطَع الملابس

head رأس / face وجه	legs ساق	feet أقدام	body جسد	neck رقبة
earrings (n) حلق/قرط	trousers (n) بنطلون	boots (n) حذاء برقبة	belt (n) حزام	necklace (n) قلادة/عقد
headscarf (n) حجاب	shorts (n) شورت	sandals (n) صندل/خُف	handbag (n) حقيبة يد	tie (n) رابطة عنق
scarf (n) وشاح/طرحة		trainers (n) حذاء رياضى	jumper (n) بلوفر	
sunglasses (n) نظارة شمسية		shoes (n) حذاء	galabeya (n) جلباب	

Adjectives for clothes صفات خاصة بالملابس

beautiful	جميل	pretty	جميل
casual	ملابس غير رسمية/كاجوال	smart	أنيق
colourful	زاهى الألوان	strange	غريب
comfortable	مريح	striped	مقلم/مخطط
loose	واسع/ فضفاض	traditional	تقليدى

Materials مواد خام

cotton	القطن	metal	المعدن
glass	الزجاج	plastic	البلاستيك
gold	الذهب	wood	الخشب
leather	الجلد	wool	الصوف
linen	الكتان		

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:

(n) = noun | (adj) = adjective | (prep) = preposition
(v) = verb | (adv) = adverb | (conj) = conjunction

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

Additional Vocabulary

المفردات الإضافية

although (conj)	بالرغم من	look (ed) like	يبدو/يشبه
blog (n)	مدونة إلكترونية	probably (adv)	ربما/من المحتمل
electric (adj)	كهربى	similar (adj)	مشابه/مماثل
flat (n)	شقة	style (n)	أسلوب

Check Point

Choose and complete: wooden – dress – electric

1. My little son can't ..... himself.
2. We will drive ..... cars in the future.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Language Expressions

التعبيرات اللغوية

keep > warm/cool	يبقى دافئًا/باردًا
the same ... as	نفس الشىء ... مثل

Prepositions

حروف الجر

best for	الأفضل لـ	know about	يعرف عن
dress in	يرتدى	protect from	يحمى من

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	P.P.	Present		Past simple	P.P.
cost	يكلف	cost	cost	know	يعرف	knew	known
grow	يزرع/ينمو	grew	grown	wear	يرتدى/يلبس	wore	worn

Words and Opposites

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
comfortable	مريح	uncomfortable	غير مريح
simple	بسيط	complex/difficult	معقد/صعب
wear	يرتدى	take off	يخلع
popular	شائع/محبوب	unpopular	غير محبوب

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

1 climate
المناخ بوجه عام (أى على مدار السنة أو الفصل كله)
weather
الطقس (لفترة محددة من الوقت فى فصل معين)

- What type of material is best for a hot climate?
- You should wear heavy clothes. The weather **these days** is very cold.

2 skin
جلد (الكائن الحى)
leather
الجلد (بعد تصنيع الأشياء)

- My son has a cut on his skin.
- This bag is made of good leather.

3 is/are + made of
يصنع من (والمادة الخام ما زالت موجودة لم تتغير حالتها)
is/are + made from
يصنع من (والمادة الخام تغيرت وغير موجودة فى حالتها الأولى) أو يصنع من شىء آخر

- This chair is made of wood.
- Glass is made from sand.

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Words and Synonyms

الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
comfortable	مريح	relaxing	مريح
pretty	جميل	beautiful	جميل

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
comfort (v)	يريح	-able		تحويل الفعل لصفة		comfortable (adj)	مريح
tradition (n)	تقليد	-al		تحويل الاسم لصفة		traditional (adj)	تقليدى

هذا الجزء يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المتشابهة فى الهجاء ولكن مختلفة فى المعنى.

Similar Spelling - Different Meaning

Word	الكلمة	Similar word	الكلمة المشابهة
belt	حزام	built	بنى
boots	حذاء برقبة	boats	قوارب
metal	المعدن	medal	ميدالية

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

B Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-listening question:

- What types of clothes do you prefer?

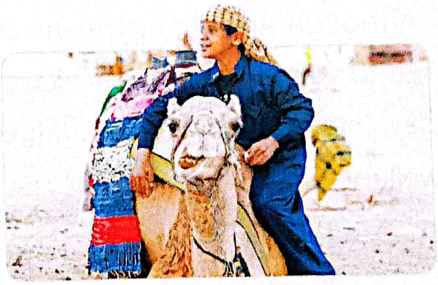
Listen to four people talking about their clothes. Match the people with the photos on page 34. SB page 35

1. Narrator: **Huda**

I'm Huda. These are the types of clothes I usually wear. I like to be comfortable and feel relaxed(1) in my clothes. These sunglasses were a present from my mum and I love them. I think I wear them outside most days!

2. Narrator: **Tarek**

I'm Tarek and I wear these clothes when I'm helping my father. It's really hot outside today and these traditional(2) clothes keep me cool and protect me from the sun when I'm working.



3. Narrator: **Sara**

I'm Sara and I'm wearing my favourite colour today! I think I dress in a traditional style, but I like to be colourful(3). My headscarf(4) is from the market. It's a cool colour, isn't it?

4. Narrator: **Adam**

My name's Adam and I'm going for a special meal with my grandparents, which is why I'm wearing these clothes. I usually wear jeans. I quite like looking smart(5), but I think I look a bit like my father when he is going to work!

(1) مسترخٍ (4) حجاب

(2) تقليدى (5) أنيق

(3) زاهى الألوان

Post-listening question:

- What do you usually wear when you go on special occasions?

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

Pre-reading question:

Lesson 2

- What do you think the clothes and jewellery in Ancient Egypt were made of?

Read about clothes in Ancient Egypt. What did the people love to wear?

SB Page 36

Clothes in Ancient Egypt

In Ancient Egypt, men and women wore similar clothes. They both wore loose(1), white, linen(2) clothes with a belt(3). Most of the time, Ancient Egyptians did not wear shoes but people sometimes wore expensive leather(4) sandals. Children did not usually wear many clothes until they were about six years old. Then they started to wear the same clothes as their parents.

Although Ancient Egyptians' clothes were simple, they loved to wear heavy, metal(5) jewellery(6). Like some people today, they liked to wear beautiful gold necklaces and other jewellery.

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

loose /luːs/
clothes /kloʊðz/
linen /lInIn/
jewellery /dʒuːəlri/

Post-reading questions:

1. How are the clothes we wear today different from those in Ancient Egypt?
2. Do you think Ancient Egyptian clothes looked nice? Why/Why not?

(1) واسع/فضفاض (4) جلد
(2) كتان (5) معدن
(3) حزام (6) مجوهرات

Life Skills

1. Do you think what people wear is important? Why?
2. How do you decide what to wear? Do you listen to the opinions of your friends and family about clothes?
3. What things can you know about someone from his or her clothes? What can't you know?

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

Pre-reading question:

Lesson 2

- What do you think the clothes and jewellery in Ancient Egypt were made of?

Read about clothes in Ancient Egypt. What did the people love to wear?

SB Page 36

Clothes in Ancient Egypt

In Ancient Egypt, men and women wore similar clothes. They both wore loose(1), white, linen(2) clothes with a belt(3). Most of the time, Ancient Egyptians did not wear shoes but people sometimes wore expensive leather(4) sandals. Children did not usually wear many clothes until they were about six years old. Then they started to wear the same clothes as their parents.

Although Ancient Egyptians' clothes were simple, they loved to wear heavy, metal(5) jewellery(6). Like some people today, they liked to wear beautiful gold necklaces and other jewellery.

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

loose /luːs/
clothes /kloʊðz/
linen /lInIn/
jewellery /dʒuːəlri/

Post-reading questions:

1. How are the clothes we wear today different from those in Ancient Egypt?
2. Do you think Ancient Egyptian clothes looked nice? Why/Why not?

(1) واسع/فضفاض (4) جلد
(2) كتان (5) معدن
(3) حزام (6) مجوهرات

Life Skills

1. Do you think what people wear is important? Why?
2. How do you decide what to wear? Do you listen to the opinions of your friends and family about clothes?
3. What things can you know about someone from his or her clothes? What can't you know?

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering Understanding Applying Analysing Evaluating Creating

Practise more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I cover my bed with a nice ..... made of linen. الفيوم ٢٠٢٣
   a) scarf b) belt c) skirt d) sheet
2. Shoes, bags and belts are often made of ..... . الغربية ٢٠٢٣
   a) wool b) leather c) metal d) cotton
3. Women and girls often wear ..... on their heads. دمياط ٢٠٢٣
   a) scarfs b) rings c) earrings d) watches
4. She is wearing a pair of beautiful gold ..... . الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
   a) scissors b) earrings c) gloves d) tools
5. He wore a long, green, cotton ..... . الدقهلية ٢٠٢٢
   a) earrings b) galabeya c) handbags d) trainers
6. Parents will do anything to ..... their children from harm.
   a) take b) protect c) buy d) give
7. When it is hot, I wear my ..... to protect my eyes. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) sunglasses b) sandals c) trousers d) earrings
8. A ..... is a website where people share their thoughts and ideas.
   a) blog b) scarf c) tie d) sheet
9. It's a beautiful jacket. You look very ..... . المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
   a) bad b) smart c) terrible d) sad
10. Mum's ..... scarf is good for cold weather.
    a) metal b) wool c) wood d) plastic
11. My mother likes to wear big and ..... dresses. أسيوط ٢٠٢٣
    a) short b) loose c) small d) little
12. My sister wore a/an ..... dress. It was attractive.
    a) wooden b) unpopular c) ugly d) pretty
13. I like to play football in my ..... . They help me run fast.
    a) sandals b) trainers c) boots d) shoes
14. His trousers are a bit large, so he wears a ..... . الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢
    a) shoes b) tie c) sandals d) belt
15. In winter, we usually wear heavy ..... . الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣
    a) shoes b) trainers c) sandals d) jumpers
16. Ancient Egyptians wore leather ..... in their legs. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣
    a) sandals b) scarf c) necklaces d) earrings

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

C Language

Adjective order ترتيب الصفات

- **Use more than one adjective in this order. Do not use more than three or four adjectives.**
- استخدم أكثر من صفة فى هذا الترتيب. لا تستخدم أكثر من ثلاث أو أربع صفات.

Size/Description	Shape	Age	Colour	Nationality	Material	Noun
الوصف/الحجم	الشكل	العمر	اللون	الجنسية	المادة	الشىء
big/pretty	long	old	green	Egyptian	cotton	dress
small/nice	short	new	white	French	linen	clothes
large/beautiful	tall	young	blue	English	leather	galabeya

- Women like to wear beautiful, gold necklaces.
- She likes loose, white, linen clothes.
- He wore a long, green, cotton galabeya.
- It's a beautiful, brown and orange necklace.
- It's a beautiful, blue skirt.
- Mr and Mrs Osman live in a big, old, traditional flat in Aswan.

Got it ?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. She gave him a ..... (black, Egyptian, small) vase.
   - الإجابة الصحيحة (small, black, Egyptian) لأن الترتيب هنا حجم، لون، جنسية.
2. This is a ..... (new, Italian, wonderful) film.
   - الإجابة الصحيحة (wonderful, new, Italian) لأن الترتيب هنا وصف ثم عمر ثم جنسية.
3. It is in the ..... (large, metal, blue) container.
   - الإجابة الصحيحة (large, blue, metal) لأن الترتيب هنا حجم ثم لون ثم مادة الصنع.

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

PRACTICE

Language Exercises

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Look at that ..... necklace. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣
   a) long, pretty, gold
   b) long, gold, pretty
   c) pretty, long, gold
   d) pretty, gold, long
2. Mohamed bought a ..... handbag to his mother. سوهاج ٢٠٢٣
   a) leather, small, yellow
   b) yellow, leather, small
   c) small, yellow, leather
   d) leather, yellow, small
3. It's a ..... skirt. الأقصر ٢٠٢٣
   a) beautiful, new, blue
   b) blue, beautiful, new
   c) beautiful, blue, new
   d) blue, new, beautiful
4. Shams loves wearing her ..... galabeya. بورسعيد ٢٠٢٣
   a) cotton, red, loose
   b) red, cotton, loose
   c) red, loose, cotton
   d) loose, red, cotton
5. My uncle wore a ..... tie in the party. سوهاج ٢٠٢٢
   a) wool, blue, nice
   b) nice, wool, blue
   c) blue, nice, wool
   d) nice, blue, wool
6. He bought ..... new trousers.
   a) linen b) smart c) leather d) black
7. Rich people sometimes wore ..... sandals. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣
   a) expensive, leather
   b) linen, pretty
   c) leather, big
   d) leather, red
8. Amira has ..... eyes. المنوفية ٢٠٢٢
   a) beautiful, brown
   b) brown, beautiful
   c) blue, small
   d) young, beautiful
9. She lost a ..... .
   a) cat, small white
   b) white, cat small
   c) small, cat white
   d) small, white cat
10. Do you have enough money to buy this ..... belt? الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٢
    a) long, black, leather
    b) black, leather, long
    c) leather, long, black
    d) long, leather, black

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Sama has a ..... (cotton/pink/small) skirt. أسيوط ٢٠٢٣
2. He bought a ..... (British/wonderful/woolen) suit.
3. This poor man is wearing a/an ..... (old, wool, simple) shirt. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
4. These are ..... (plastic, expensive, black) sunglasses. سوهاج ٢٠٢٣
5. Lina wants a ..... (metal, gray) desk. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣
6. The ..... (young, happy) boy was playing in the park.

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

D Skills

Write it right

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.

How to write about different colours and styles of clothes

كيفية الكتابة عن ألوان وأنماط الملابس

- There are different kinds of clothes with different colours and styles.
- Some people like light colours and others like dark colours.
- My (فرد/أفراد من العائلة) like/likes wearing (نوع الملابس المفضل).
- My (فرد/ أفراد من العائلة) don't/doesn't like wearing (نوع الملابس).
- I like to wear (نوع الملابس المفضل).
- They should be (وصف الملابس).

Writing tips

Avoid repeating the essential words and phrases because it means you don't have fully thought about the topic. You can use a dictionary.

تجنب تكرار الكلمات والتعبيرات لأن هذا يعني أنك لست ملمًا بالموضوع الذى تكتب عنه، يمكنك استخدام القاموس سيساعدك كثيرًا.

Example

The clothes my family wear

There are different kinds of clothes with different colours and styles. Everyone has their own style. Some people like light colours and others like dark colours. My grandparents like wearing traditional clothes with dark colours. They wear loose clothes. My father likes to wear a shirt with a beautiful tie. He is very smart. My mother doesn't like short clothes at all. She always wears a headscarf. My brother, sister and I like to wear casual clothes. They should be modern. I like to wear T-shirts with jeans. They should be colourful and smart.

Check Point

Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"My favourite styles of clothes"

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

TEST YOURSELF

Take a test

Unit 10 Lessons (1 & 2)

19.5

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

المنوفية ٢٠٢٢
نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

1. In Ancient Egypt, ... wore similar clothes.
   a) men and girls b) boys and girls
   c) women and boys d) men and women
2. They both wore loose, white, ... clothes.
   a) wool b) wood c) linen d) leather
3. Ancient Egyptians didn't wear ..... .
   a) belts b) shoes c) scarves d) trousers
4. Rich people wore expensive, leather ..... .
   a) sandals b) skirts c) shirts d) shorts

2 Complete the following dialogue:

بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣

Mariam is meeting Faten in the street.

Mariam : I didn't see you yesterday. Where did you go?
Faten : (1)..... .
Mariam : To the shops! (2).....?
Faten : Because I wanted to buy a skirt.
Mariam : (3).....?
Faten : My favourite colour is red.
Mariam : What is it made of?
Faten : (4)..... .
Mariam : Was it expensive?
Faten : (5)..... .

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Girls prefer wearing fashionable ..... in their ears. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٣
   a) necklaces b) rings c) sunglasses d) earrings
2. Adel always wears ..... to protect his eyes from the sun. السويس ٢٠٢٣
   a) sandals b) trainers c) sunglasses d) earrings
3. Your watch isn't expensive. It's made of ..... . بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣
   a) wool b) plastic c) linen d) gold
4. Tala likes wearing ..... clothes like T-shirts and trainers. أسيوط ٢٠٢٢
   a) casual b) formal c) traditional d) plastic
5. ..... people like to wear expensive jewellery.
   a) Rich b) Poor c) Simple d) Old

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

6. I usually wear sports clothes because they are ..... . البحيرة ٢٠٢٢
a) hard b) ugly c) uncomfortable d) comfortable

7. We should use ..... cars as they don't pollute the environment.
a) electric b) oil c) petrol d) electricity

8. She bought a/an ..... car.
a) blue, expensive b) expensive, blue c) Chinese, blue d) metal, blue

9. I used to drive ..... car.
a) a blue, old, German b) an old, German, blue
c) a German, old, blue d) an old, blue, German

10. Dad likes ..... clothes. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣
a) loose, white, linen b) linen, white, loose
c) white, loose, linen d) linen, loose, white

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. It's a ..... (linen, beautiful, blue) dress. بور سعيد ٢٠٢٢
2. My favourite ..... (cotton/old/black) shirt was made in China.
3. Ali bought ..... (smart/leather/black) trousers. القليوبية ٢٠٢٢
4. It's a ..... (red/leather/round) bag.

5 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"Clothes you like to wear"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Challenging Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

1. We met ..... people at the Pyramids.
a) two very smart b) very two smart
c) very smart two d) smart very two

2. We went outside to play ..... it was raining.
a) because b) so
c) but d) although

3. The clown was wearing a ..... hat.
a) big yellow-green b) big green-yellow
c) yellow and green big d) big, green and yellow

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

STUDY Lessons 3 & 4

Watch a video

SB pages 38 - 40 | WB pages 95 & 96

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

bamboo (n)	الخيزران	own (ed) (v)	يملك
chemicals (n)	مواد كيميائية	pick (ed) (v)	يقطف
crops (n)	محاصيل	quality (n)	جودة
government (n)	الحكومة	soil (n)	تربة زراعية
industry (n)	صناعة	sports clothes (n)	ملابس رياضية
luxury (n)	فخم/ترف	teenager (n)	مراهق
member (n)	فرد	uniform (n)	زى موحد
occasion (n)	مناسبة	wedding (n)	حفل زفاف

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

change (d) (v)	يغير	greener (adj)	أكثر نظافة
factory (n)	مصنع	however (adv)	ومع ذلك
gloves (n)	قفازات	nature (n)	الطبيعة

Check Point

Choose and complete: quality – factory – gloves – soil

1. Farmers need good ..... to plant their crops.
2. Clothes that are of high ..... are expensive.
3. Wear your ..... when you hold a hot pot إناء.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

as a result	كنتيجة لذلك	keep > soft	يبقى طريًا
do > a job/ sport	يؤدى وظيفة/رياضة	make > money	يكسب مالًا

Prepositions — حروف الجر

a pair of	زوج من	by the Nile	بجوار النيل
all over the world	فى جميع أنحاء العالم	care about	يهتم بـ
amazing at	مذهل فى	important to/for	هام لـ
by hand	يدويًا/باستخدام اليد	on a special occasion	فى مناسبة خاصة

Check Point

Choose and complete: about – at – make – do

1. We should work hard to ..... more money.
2. My best friend Lojain is amazing ..... sewing.
3. We should care ..... old people.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر.

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs — تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	P.P.
break off	يقطف/يزيل	broke off	broken off
keep	يحافظ	kept	kept

Words and Opposites — الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
borrow	يستعير/يستلف	lend	يسلف
perfect (for)	ممتاز/مثالى	imperfect	غير ممتاز/مثالى
near	قريب	far	بعيد
soft	طرى/لين/ناعم	rough/hard	خشن/صلب

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا
لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

1 much + comparative — أكثر (للمقارنة بين اثنين)

- My brother is much **taller** than me.

2 used to + inf. — اعتاد أن (فعل شىء فى الماضى)

- I used to **play** in the street, but now I don't.

3 What about + (n./v.ing)? — ماذا عن ...؟

- What about **going** to the mall?

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Definitions — التعريفات

chemicals	مواد كيميائية	something produced by a scientific process
crops	محاصيل	a large amount of plants that are grown to be sold
environment	البيئة	the people and things around you in your life
industry	صناعة	a business making things to sell
luxury	فخم/ترف	expensive and good quality
perfect	مثالى/ممتاز	as good as it is possible to be
pick	يقطف	(flowers or fruit) broken off a plant
soft	طرى/ناعم	not hard to touch

Words and Synonyms — الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
near	قريب	close	قريب
perfect	ممتاز	excellent	ممتاز

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
govern (v)	يحكم	-ment		تحويل الفعل لاسم		government (n)	الحكومة

Prefix البادئة

Prefix	البادئة	Function	الوظيفة	Word	الكلمة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
im-		تعطى عكس الصفة		perfect (adj)	ممتاز	imperfect (adj)	غير ممتاز

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 3

Pre-reading question:

- Do you care more about how you look or being comfortable?

Read the blog. Where did the three people get the clothes they talk about?

SB page 38

What do you wear?

This week, we asked three Egyptian teenagers (1) what they wear and why! Use the dictionary to find the meaning of difficult words.

Noha I bought this shirt from a shop in Cairo, but I'm trying to buy fewer clothes. Clothes factories cause a lot of pollution, so they are bad for the environment (2). So sometimes I borrow my sister's clothes. She borrows (3) mine, too, because we are the same size.

Ayman These trainers were my dad's. He never wore them, so I asked if I could have them. I like doing sport and these trainers are much better than the ones I used to wear. I usually wear sports clothes (4) because they are comfortable.

Dalida This is my school uniform (5). I have to wear it every school day. That beautiful dress is the one my grandmother made me for my cousin's wedding (6). She's amazing at sewing. She always makes us clothes for special occasions (7).

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

environment /ɪnvaɪərənmənt/ occasion /əkeɪʒən/

Post-reading question:

- Why do you think clothes factories cause a lot of pollution?

(1) مراهقون (2) البيئة (3) يستعير
(4) ملابس رياضية (5) زى مدرسى موحد (6) حفل زفاف
(7) مناسبات خاصة

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

Pre-reading question:

- In your opinion, what industries are important to Egypt?

Read the article. Did the Ancient Egyptians make the same types of material (1) as now?

SB page 40

Egyptian linen and cotton

(1) Egypt is famous for growing crops (2) to make material. The Ancient Egyptians grew plants by the Nile to make linen. Almost everyone wore clothes made of linen and they also used the plants to make baskets.

(2) Today, Egyptian cotton is famous all over the world. Because cotton from Egypt is very good, it is often used to make luxury (3) clothes and things for homes. Many people work in the cotton industry (4), from farmers to people making or selling clothes and material.

(3) The climate and soil (5) in Egypt are perfect for growing cotton. Water from the Nile is still used for the crops. All of the cotton is picked (6) by hand to keep it soft.

(4) When you grow cotton, it uses a lot of water and chemicals (7). Now, the government is trying to help farmers to protect (8) the environment and use less water.

(1) مادة خام
(2) محاصيل
(3) فخم/ترف
(4) صناعة
(5) تربة زراعية
(6) يقتطف
(7) مواد كيميائية
(8) يحمي

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

luxury /lʌkʃəri/
chemical /kemIkəl/
industry /Indəstri/
government /gʌvərnmənt/

Post-reading question:

- How can the farmers protect the environment?

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

Pre-reading question:

- Would you like to buy clothes made from bamboo? Why? Why not?

Complete the article with these words. WB Page 96

Is bamboo[1] the new cotton?

Some people are starting to use a plant called bamboo instead of cotton to make clothes. The plant is an important **crop** in China where the bamboo **industry** makes a lot of money. However, although bamboo grows very quickly, it is not a perfect[2] plant. After the bamboo is **picked**, people often use **chemicals** before they can use it to make clothes. These are bad for nature[3]. Also, the material made from bamboo is not very **soft**. As a result, it is not used for expensive, **luxury** clothes which are usually made from cotton.

(1) الخيزران
(2) مثالى/ممتاز
(3) الطبيعة

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

bamboo /bæmbuː/ nature /neɪtʃər/

Post-reading questions:

1. Why is bamboo an important crop for China?
2. Why is bamboo not a perfect plant?

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Egypt is famous for growing ..... to make materials. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣
   a) groups b) crops c) goals d) topics
2. Farmers use ..... to protect their crops from insects. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣
   a) soil b) climate c) chemicals d) industry
3. The desert is a difficult ..... to live in. الفيوم ٢٠٢٣
   a) environment b) environmental c) city d) village
4. I wear smart clothes in special ..... like wedding parties. أسيوط ٢٠٢٣
   a) customers b) buildings c) lives d) occasions
5. Yesterday was my brother's ..... . He got married to our cousin. الغربية ٢٠٢٢
   a) wedding b) birthday c) festival d) birth
6. They used the best material to make ..... clothes. سوهاج ٢٠٢٣
   a) bad b) luxury c) cheap d) ugly
7. "....." means a business making things to sell. القليوبية ٢٠٢٣
   a) Crop b) Industry c) Cotton d) Linen
8. "....." are boys or girls from thirteen to nineteen. قنا ٢٠٢٣
   a) Babies b) Teenagers c) Volunteers d) Adults
9. The Ancient Egyptians grew plants ..... the Nile to make linen.
   a) by b) to c) on d) at
10. Almost every family in the country ..... a computer or a tablet.
    a) collects b) owes c) saves d) owns
11. He studied hard for the test. ..... a result, he got high marks.
    a) Such as b) Such c) Like d) As
12. Of all the ..... in my family, my mother is the person I am proud of most.
    a) managers b) members c) numbers d) teenagers
13. This is my school ..... . I have to wear every school day. أسيوط ٢٠٢٣
    a) uniform b) gate c) team d) library
14. Cotton is not a hard material. It is ..... . الغربية ٢٠٢٣
    a) rough b) safe c) soft d) cheap
15. People like to wear good ..... clothes.
    a) soil b) industry c) occasion d) quality

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

C Language

1 Demonstratives أسماء الإشارة

this **that** **these** **those**

This (هذا - هذه) اسم إشارة للمفرد القريب.

- I like this **phone** a lot.
- This is the best **concert** I went to.

That (ذلك - تلك) اسم إشارة للمفرد البعيد.

- That **café** looks good.
- That was a great **concert**.

These (هؤلاء) اسم إشارة للجمع القريب.

- Do you like these **shoes**?
- These two **people** are my neighbours, Said and Sayed.

Those (أولئك) اسم إشارة للجمع البعيد.

- Those are my **keys**.
- Those were the best **days** of my life.

2 one/ones

Use one (singular) or ones (plural) to replace nouns in a sentence.

نستخدم (one) (مع المفرد) أو (ones) (مع الجمع) لاستبدال الأسماء فى الجملة.

نضع (one/ones) كالتالى:

(١) بعد الصفة:

- See those two girls? Hend is the tall **one** and Huda is the short one.
- My trousers are old. I need some new **ones**.

(٢) بعد (the):

- See those two girls? Helen is the **one** on the left.
- Let's look at the photographs – the **ones** you took in Paris.

(٣) بعد (Which):

- You can borrow a book. Which **one** do you want?
- Which **ones** are yours?

(٤) بعد (this - these - that - those):

- This cookie looks nice, but that **one** looks delicious.

Got it ?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 ..... (Those) bottle over there is empty.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (That) لأن bottle اسم مفرد ولوجود over there الدالة على أنها إشارة للبعيد.

2 I want those books, not these ..... (one).

- الإجابة الصحيحة (ones) لأنها تعود على اسم جمع books.

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

PRACTICE

Language Exercises

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Can you give me ..... book? I cannot get it. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣
   a) this b) that c) these d) those
2. You must overcome تتغلب على all ..... difficulties. القليوبية ٢٠٢٣
   a) this b) that c) thus d) these
3. Let's watch a different film. This ..... is so boring. دمياط ٢٠٢٣
   a) one b) ones c) one's d) ones
4. ..... is a nice T-shirt. I want to buy it. أسيوط ٢٠٢٣
   a) These b) Those c) They d) That
5. ..... questions are difficult. Can you help me?
   a) This b) That c) These d) There
6. I don't want these expensive shoes, please give me cheaper ..... . الغربية ٢٠٢٣
   a) one b) one's c) ones' d) ones
7. Where did you get ..... sunglasses? المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
   a) those b) this c) that d) there
8. I don't like the blue balloon; I prefer the red ..... . القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) one b) ones c) one's d) ones'
9. Are ..... the right ingredients for the cake?
   a) them b) that c) this d) these
10. Look at all the pretty flowers; the pink ..... are my favourite.
    a) one b) ones c) this d) these

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Why don't you wear ..... (these) nice scarf? بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣
2. ..... (This) earrings are my grandmother's. أسيوط ٢٠٢٣
3. This bag is the ..... (ones) my mother bought me. بورسعيد ٢٠٢٣
4. ..... (That) people we met last night were really nice.
5. These rings are silver but those ..... (one) are gold. الفيوم ٢٠٢٣
6. **A:** Would you like to have a car? **B:** No, I don't need ..... (ones).

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

D Skills

1. Speaking

Talking about clothes التحدث عن الملابس

Situation	ما يقال فى هذا الموقف Response	جملة الرد

online

How many pairs of shoes do you have? Which ones are your favourite?
كم عدد الأحذية لديك؟ أيهما تفضل؟

I have about four pairs of shoes, but my trainers are my favourite.
أمتلك حوالى ٤ أحذية، ولكن حذائى الرياضى هو المفضل لدىَّ.

Which clothes shops do you like? Which one is your favourite?
أى محلات الملابس تحب؟ أيهما الأفضل لديك؟

I love casual clothing shops, but my favourite is sports clothing shops.
أحب متاجر الملابس الكاجوال. ولكن متاجر الملابس الرياضية هى المفضلة لدىَّ.

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialogue:

Rana and Alaa are talking about clothes.

Rana : Hi, Alaa! I love your T-shirt. Where did you get it?

Alaa : Thanks! (1)..... .

Rana : Can you come with me to that shop?

Alaa : Yes, of course. (2).....?

Rana : I'd like a white T-shirt.

Alaa : Do you have enough money?

Rana : (3)..... .

Alaa : (4).....?

Rana : I have two hundred pounds.

Alaa : That's enough to buy a good one. (5)..... .

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

2. Write it right

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.

1. How to write about Egyptian linen and cotton

كيفية الكتابة عن القطن والكتان المصرى

- Egypt is famous for growing crops to make material.
- The Ancient Egyptians grew plants by the Nile to make linen. They used them to make clothes.
- Today, Egyptian cotton is famous all over the world because it is very good.
- The climate and soil in Egypt are perfect for growing cotton.
- It is often used to make luxury clothes and things for homes.

Example

Egyptian linen and cotton

Egypt is famous for growing crops to make materials. The Ancient Egyptians grew plants by the Nile to make linen. They used it to make clothes. Today, Egyptian cotton is famous all over the world because it is very good. The climate and soil in Egypt are perfect for growing cotton. It is often used to make luxury clothes and things for homes. There are a lot of people working in the cotton industry. They still use water from the Nile for the crops. Cotton uses a lot of water and chemicals to grow. However, the government is trying to help farmers to protect the environment and use less water.

2. How to write about an advert

كيف تكتب عن إعلان

Example

An advert for trainers

My name's Omar. I'm 15 years old. I'm selling beautiful, new, white trainers. They are very luxury and comfortable with high quality. They are made in the USA. They are made of rubber. Their size is 41. They were a present for my birthday. I like them very much, but I already have ones that are the same! I always wear them while I am doing sports. They are perfect for work, school or sports. Their price is perfect. They are 500 pounds. The buyer can take back his money if he doesn't like them. If you are interested, email me and we can discuss the price.

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

1 Read the following, then answer the questions:

الغربية ٢٠٢٣

Hala likes clothes very much. She always goes shopping for new fashionable clothes. She likes colourful, comfortable clothes. She likes to feel relaxed in her clothes. Her favourite colours are orange and yellow. She likes wearing a headscarf which matches the clothes she wears. Hala doesn't like traditional clothes. She thinks **they** are something from the past. Her handbag is always the same colour as her blouse. Her friends think that Hala is smart. Sometimes they ask her from where she buys her cool clothes, but she never tells them!

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the passage?

.....

2. What does the underlined pronoun "**they**" refer to?

.....

3. Why do you think Hala's friends ask her about the shops where she goes shopping?

.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. ..... is the opposite of "fashionable".
   a) Colourful b) Comfortable c) Favourite d) Traditional
5. Hala likes ..... clothes.
   a) fashionable b) old c) traditional d) ancient
6. Hala's friends think she is ..... .
   a) smart b) special c) stupid d) local

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. ..... are plants that are grown on farms for food.
   a) Bamboos b) Chemicals c) Crops d) Materials
2. I always ..... a pen from my friend when I forget mine.

أسيوط ٢٠٢٣

   a) borrow b) lend c) take d) look
3. "....." means as good as it is possible to be.
   a) Perfect b) Ugly c) Terrible d) Horrible

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

4. My brother likes to ..... his mobile every year. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣
a) make b) waste c) change d) save

5. The factory threw dangerous ..... into the river. الغربية ٢٠٢٣
a) chemicals b) bacteria c) plants d) texts

6. People can enjoy ..... by going for walks or camping.
a) pollution b) noise c) nature d) quality

7. When you ..... a job, you will learn new skills.
a) keep b) play c) do d) make

8. I don't like these trousers. Can you show me smaller .....?
a) one b) ones c) one's d) ones'

9. **A:** Can I have two mangoes, mother? **B:** No, just ..... . That's better for your health.
a) ones b) ones' c) one's d) one

10. I bought ..... shirt from a little shop in Cairo. دمياط ٢٠٢٣
a) this b) these c) those d) there

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. What's ..... (this) over there? المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
2. These trainers are much better than the ..... (one) I had before. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣
3. Pass me ..... (these) magazine over there, please. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣
4. Shall I buy that blue T-shirt or that green ..... (ones)? القليوبية ٢٠٢٣

4 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"Egyptian cotton"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Challenging Questions

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

1. **A:** Which books are yours? **B:** The ..... (one) on the desk.
2. ..... (Those) bad news came yesterday. I was very sad.
3. I'd like healthy potatoes, I don't like the ..... (one) that are too spicy.

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

STUDY

Watch a video

Lessons 5 & 6

SB pages 41-43 | WB pages 97-99

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

advert (n)	إعلان	fit (ted) (v)	يناسب/يلائم
changing room (n)	غرفة تغيير الملابس	handbag (n)	حقيبة يد
chest of drawers (n)	خزانة ذات أدراج	shopkeeper (n)	صاحب المتجر
customer (n)	زبون	tool (n)	أداة
discuss (ed) (v)	يناقش		

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

a bit	قليل	object (n)	شيء
already (adv)	بالفعل	sale (n)	بيع/تخفيض
check (ed) (v)	يتحقق من/يتأكد	statue (n)	تمثال
email (ed) (v)	يرسل إيميل	useful (adj)	مفيد

Check Point

Choose and complete: fit – tool – check – advert

1. I saw a/an ..... for a cool handbag. I'd like to buy it.
2. Does this T-shirt ..... you?
3. You should ..... your answers at the end.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

get > married	يتزوج
move > house	ينتقل إلى مسكن جديد

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

Prepositions — حروف الجر

at the top	فى القمة	look for	يبحث عن
buy for	يشترى لـ/من أجل	present for	هدية لـ
for sale	للبيع	try on	يقيس (ملابس)

Check Point

Choose and complete: got – moved – on – for

1. They ..... house last week.
2. I bought a present ..... my mum.
3. We should try ..... any clothes we buy.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر.

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Words and Synonyms — الكلمات ومرادفها

Word — الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning) — مرادفها
fantastic — رائع	wonderful — رائع
useful — مفيد	helpful — مفيد

Suffix اللاحقة

Word — الكلمة	Suffix — اللاحقة	Function — الوظيفة	The new word — الكلمة الجديدة
perfect (adj) ممتاز	-ly	تحويل الصفة لحال	perfectly (adv) بشكل ممتاز
use (v) يستخدم	-ful	تحويل الفعل لصفة	useful (adj) مفيد

هذا الجزء يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المتشابهة فى الهجاء ولكن مختلفة فى المعنى.

Similar Spelling - Different Meaning

Word — الكلمة	Similar word — الكلمة المشابهة
price — ثمن/سعر	prize — جائزة
sale — بيع/تخفيض	sell — يبيع

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

B Reading & Listening Skills

Listen to a conversation in a shop and answer the questions.

Lesson 5

SB page 41

Shopkeeper Hello, can I help you?

Eman Hi, yes, I'm looking for a dress for a special occasion (1). It's my brother's birthday party next week.

Shopkeeper Oh, nice. What type of dress would you like?

Eman I'd like something like this one ..... but do you have a different colour? I don't like yellow.

Shopkeeper We have this one in blue.

Eman That's beautiful! Could I try it on?

Shopkeeper Of course. The changing room (2) is here. ..... What do you think? Does it fit (3)?

Eman It's a bit big. Do you have a smaller size (4)?

Shopkeeper Let me look. Yes, here's a smaller one. Try this on.

Eman Thank you. It fits perfectly (5), I'll take it!

Shopkeeper Great!

(1) مناسبة خاصة
(2) غرفة تغيير الملابس
(3) يناسب
(4) مقاس
(5) تمامًا

Pre-reading question:

- Have you ever sold anything online? If yes, was it a good experience or a bad one?

Lesson 6

Read the advert and answer the questions.

SB Page 42

BAG FOR SALE

I'm selling a beautiful, new, black leather handbag. It was a present for my birthday but I already have one that is the same! It is very large and perfect for work or school. The price is L.E. 500. Email me for more information.

Post-reading question:

- Would you like to buy this bag? Why? Why not?

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

Pre-reading question:

- Did you buy anything online before? What was it?

Read the advert. Which of the objects in Exercise 1 is it trying to sell? WB Page 98

I'm selling a cool, old wooden chest of drawers. It was made in 1910 for my great-grandfather! It's large and perfect for keeping things in, but we have moved house and our new home is too small for it. If you are interested, email me and we can discuss the price.

خزانة ذات أدراج

Read and correct the underlined words in this advert.

Would you like to **buy** a really useful tool? I'm selling a nice strong **one** that you can use in the garden. It is made of metal with **wood** at the top. It's perfect for people who want to grow vegetables – and the price is not expensive, it's very cheap!

Email me if you are interested.

غالى الثمن

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

chest /tʃest/

drawer /drɔːʳ/

Post-reading question:

- What is this tool used for?

تطبيق الأضواء

اختبر نفسك بأسئلة متنوعة بأكثر من صيغة على تطبيق الأضواء.

نزل التطبيق أو ادخل على موقع الأضواء:
www.aladwaa.com

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I found a/an ..... for a job in the newspaper. دمياط ٢٠٢٢
   a) advert b) climate c) style d) occasion
2. Where is your brother? He went to the ..... room to try on the jacket. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣
   a) living b) changing c) music d) dining
3. A ..... is a piece of furniture for keeping clothes in. أسيوط ٢٠٢٣
   a) bed b) chest of drawers c) mirror d) table
4. I saw a new handbag ..... sale online. أسيوط ٢٠٢٣
   a) for b) out c) of d) in
5. His clothes do not ..... him very well. They are a bit large.
   a) wear b) put c) fat d) fit
6. I bought a necklace ..... my mum last weekend.
   a) in b) after c) for d) out
7. The shops are very busy today. There are too many ..... . القليوبية ٢٠٢٣
   a) assistants b) customers c) shopkeepers d) sellers
8. To ..... is to put on a piece of clothes to check if it fits or not. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
   a) try on b) turn on c) depend on d) stand on
9. I had a ..... time at the park with my friends. We were very happy.
   a) bad b) useless c) fantastic d) terrible
10. Mum ..... the price of the fruits before buying them from the market.
    a) married b) bought c) moved d) checked
11. The shoe shop is having a ..... this week. We should go and buy everything we need.
    a) sell b) sail c) seal d) sale
12. I made a colourful drawing as a present ..... my best friend's birthday.
    a) at b) by c) for d) on
13. The mountain was very high, but the view ..... the top was amazing.
    a) by b) for c) in d) at
14. My cousin is going to ..... married next week.
    a) do b) get c) make d) have
15. Aspirins are ..... for headache.
    a) useless b) helpless c) useful d) harmful
16. My mum is in a clothes shop looking ..... a dress.
    a) in b) after c) for d) out

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

Skills

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.

1. Speaking

Shopping for clothes التسوق من أجل شراء الملابس

Situation ما يقال فى هذا الموقف **Response** جملة الرد

online

Hello, can I help you? مرحبًا، هل يمكننى مساعدتك؟

I'm looking for a jacket for a special occasion. أبحث عن جاكيت لمناسبة خاصة.

What type of jacket would you like? أى نوع من الجاكيت تريد؟

I'd like something loose but smart. أريد جاكيت فضفاضًا ولكن أنيقًا.

We have this black jacket, or that red one in the window.
لدينا هذا الجاكيت الأسود أو ذلك الأحمر الذى فى الفاترينة.

Could I try on the black one? هل يمكن أن أقيس الجاكيت الأسود؟

Of course. The changing room is there. بالطبع غرفة تغيير الملابس هناك.

Thank you. Yes, this one fits perfectly. I'll take it!
شكرًا لك. هذا الجاكيت يناسبنى تمامًا. سوف أشتريه.

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialogue:

Sameh is talking to a salesman to buy a new suit. السويس ٢٠٢٣

Salesman : How can I help you?
Sameh : (1)..... .
Salesman : (2).....?
Sameh : I want a black one, please.
Salesman : (3).....?
Sameh : Medium, please. Can I try it on?
Salesman : (4)..... .
Sameh : How much does it cost?
Salesman : (5)..... .
Sameh : It's perfect. I'll take it.

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Nour is buying a loose, blue dress for a special occasion. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣

Shopkeeper : Hello! Can I help you?
Nour : (1)..... .
Shopkeeper : What size would you like?
Nour : (2)..... .
Shopkeeper : (3).....?
Nour : I'd like it blue.
Shopkeeper : Here it is.
Nour : (4).....?
Shopkeeper : Of course, the changing room is here.
Nour : (5)....., I'll take it.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Mum and Dad sat down to ..... where we should go for our family holiday.
   a) make b) check c) move d) discuss
2. My grandfather has a wooden ..... of drawers to keep his things in. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢
   a) block b) chest c) list d) pile
3. My sister got a new ..... for her birthday.
   a) tool b) handbag c) sale d) statue
4. Are you ..... in joining the art class to learn how to paint?
   a) interested b) useful c) fantastic d) useless
5. The new dress ..... you perfectly, and you look lovely!
   a) discusses b) fits c) checks d) moves
6. The ..... was friendly and helped me find the jacket I wanted.
   a) price b) advert c) shopkeeper d) customer
7. Manal is putting her old car up ..... sale.
   a) of b) for c) to d) by
8. These workers work harder than those ..... .
   a) ones b) one c) one's d) ones'

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

9. ..... building over there is the Cairo Tower.
a) This b) That c) Those d) These

10. She gave him a/an ..... vase.
a) small, Egyptian, black
b) small, black, Egyptian
c) black, small, Egyptian
d) Egyptian, small, black

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Young people usually like ..... (cotton, nice, modern) clothes.
2. She got married to a ..... (young/tall) man.
3. That skirt is very old, I need a modern ..... (ones).
4. ..... (Those) cup on the shelf there is yours.

4 Write an email of NINETY (90) words to your friend Marwan to tell him about the item that you want to sell. Your name is Rania and your email address is rania@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is marwan@yahoo.com.

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

Challenging Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب

1. I ..... my friend about the fun day I had at the beach.
a) moved b) checked c) sent d) emailed

2. My skirt fits me ..... .
a) imperfect b) imperfectly c) perfect d) perfectly

3. Mom took me to the shop to ..... new clothes for school. She wanted them to fit me.
a) put on b) go on c) try on d) land on

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

Review On Unit 10

Vocabulary

advert	إعلان
changing room	غرفة تغيير الملابس
chemicals	مواد كيميائية
chest of drawers	خزانة ذات أدراج
crops	محاصيل
customer	زبون
fit (ted)	يناسب/يلائم
headscarf	حجاب
industry	صناعة
jewellery	مجوهرات
jumper	بلوفر
linen	الكتان
loose	واسع/ فضفاض
luxury	فخم/ترف
occasion	مناسبة
quality	جودة
scarf	وشاح/طرحة
sheet	ملاية
smart	أنيق
soil	تربة زراعية
special occasion	مناسبة خاصة
tie	رابطة عنق
trainers	حذاء رياضى
trousers	بنطلون
try on	يقيس

Language

1. Adjective order

Size/ Description	Shape	Age	Colour	Nationality	Material	Noun
big/pretty	long	old	green	Egyptian	cotton	dress
small/nice	short	new	pink	French	Linen	shirt

- Rich Egyptians wore beautiful, gold necklaces.
- She likes loose, white, linen clothes.

2. Demonstratives

this that these those

- I like this phone a lot.
- That café looks good.
- Do you like these shoes?
- Those were the best days of my life.

3. one/ones

- Which is your car, the red one or the blue one?
- My trousers are old. I need some new ones.

Skills

1. Talking about clothes:

A: How many pairs of shoes do you have? Which ones are your favourite?

B: I have about four pairs of shoes, but my trainers are my favourite.

A: Which clothes shops do you like? Which one is your favourite?

B: I love casual clothing shops, but my favourite is sports clothing shops.

2. Shopping for clothes:

- Hello, can I help you?
  - I'm looking for a jacket for a special occasion.
- What type of jacket would you like?
  - I'd like something loose but smart.
- Could I try on the blue one?
  - Of course. The changing room is there.
- What do you think? Does it fit?
  - It's a bit big.
  - I have a smaller one you can try on.
  - Thank you. Yes, this one fits perfectly. I'll take it!

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

Question Bank

Al-Adwaa Test On Unit 10

24

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: الجيزة ٢٠٢٢

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

1. What's the plant called?
   a) Cotton. b) Bamboo.
   c) Wool. d) Linen.
2. Where is this plant important?
   a) In China. b) In Egypt.
   c) In Japan. d) In England.
3. How much money does this plant make?
   a) A lot. b) Little.
   c) Not much. d) Some.
4. What is it used for?
   a) Making paper. b) Making furniture.
   c) Making clothes. d) Making shoes.

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Hamza and Adham are talking about Egyptian cotton. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣

Hamza : Hi, Adham. In your view, what is the most important crop in Egypt?

Adham : Hi, Hamza. (1)..... .

Hamza : Cotton! (2).....?

Adham : Because it is famous all over the world.

Hamza : (3).....?

Adham : It is grown in many Egyptian fields.

Hamza : What is cotton used to make?

Adham : (4)..... .

Hamza : Do you have any cotton clothes?

Adham : (5)..... .

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions: الدقهلية ٢٠٢٢

The type of clothes that is worn usually depends on the occasion. People that attend a wedding usually wear formal clothes. Men often wear suits and women often wear dresses. Formal and smart clothes are often worn on special occasions. People often wear different clothes at work. Some jobs require people to wear special uniforms. People often choose to wear comfortable clothes inside their own homes. Their choice of clothes may be very different from the clothes **they** would wear outside. People often wear clothes which **match** their size, health and age.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the passage?

.....

2. What do people in some jobs have to wear?

.....

3. Do you usually wear formal or casual clothes? Why?

.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. People wear clothes depending on the ..... .
   a) time b) occasion c) money d) food
5. The underlined pronoun "**they**" refers to ..... .
   a) clothes b) uniforms c) people d) homes
6. The underlined word "**match**" is similar in meaning to ..... .
   a) fit b) work c) choose d) wear

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. They'd like to wear ..... clothes to keep cool in summer. الغربية ٢٠٢٢
   a) heavy b) wool c) leather d) loose
2. I like wearing my ..... because it keeps me warm.
   a) tie b) necklace c) jumper d) earrings
3. Sunglasses can protect my eyes ..... the sun.
   a) on b) for c) at d) from

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

4. ..... is a happy occasion for many people. البحيرة ٢٠٢٢
a) Weeding b) Sewing c) Stealing d) Wedding

5. ..... pollute the environment. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
a) Trees b) Chemicals c) Plants d) Glasses

6. Sunshine is very ....., but scientists say that it has also bad effects.
a) useful b) useless c) harmful d) ugly

7. I usually ..... my school bag to make sure I don't forget my homework.
a) check b) get c) move d) buy

8. She is a ..... young woman.
a) Japanese b) gold c) beautiful d) old

9. ..... sandals are very expensive. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
a) That b) These c) The ones d) This

10. These shoes are mine, but those ..... are Hend's. الغربية ٢٠٢٢
a) one b) one's c) ones d) ones'

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. This is my seat. Would you sit on another ..... (ones)? القليوبية ٢٠٢٣
2. It's a ..... (purple, nice, wool) jumper. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣
3. I want ..... (this) book on the second shelf, not this one.
4. We went on ..... (blue/ a/ great) sailing boat.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"Types of clothes people like to wear"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Assess your progress ★ ★ ★ ★ ★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

Monthly Models On Units 9&10

هذه النماذج ستساعدك فى التدرب على الاختبارات الشهرية.

March Model 1 On Unit 9

15

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Salem is inviting Nader to his cousin's house.

Salem : Hi, Nader. I was wondering if you would like to come to my cousin's house tomorrow.
Nader : (1)..... . It's a big house, isn't it?
Salem : Yes, he's got a table tennis in the garden. (2).....?
Nader : Yes, I'd like to play. Shall I bring some table tennis balls?
Salem : No, he's got those. Could you bring some food? We'll have a picnic.
Nader : (3)..... .
Salem : That's great.
Nader : (4).....?
Salem : You should come at 10 am.
Nader : (5)..... .

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Most girls like to ..... make-up.
   a) do b) make c) write d) act
2. The teacher asked the students to ..... in the new play.
   a) paint b) do c) write d) act
3. The orchestra plays international, classical and ..... music.
   a) Arab b) Arabic c) Arabian d) Arabs
4. To ..... is to leave a place that you should stay in.
   a) escape b) take c) stay d) land
5. You ..... stay until late tonight if you want.
   a) know how b) are able c) able to d) can
6. Not all countries ..... to make electric cars.
   a) can b) are able c) know d) knows how

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. ..... (she/know) how to drive a car?
2. The doctor ..... (able) see you right now. He isn't here.
3. My sister ..... (not/know) how to write a script.
4. My brother can ..... (snorkelling) very well.

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

March Model 2 On Unit 10

15

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Tasneem wants to buy a skirt.

Assistant : Can I help you?
Tasneem : Yes! (1)..... ?
Assistant : That skirt is L.E. 400.
Tasneem : Can I see it?
Assistant : Yes, what size are you?
Tasneem : (2)..... .
Assistant : (3)..... .
Tasneem : (4)..... ?
Assistant : The changing room is over there.
Tasneem : That's nice. (5)..... .

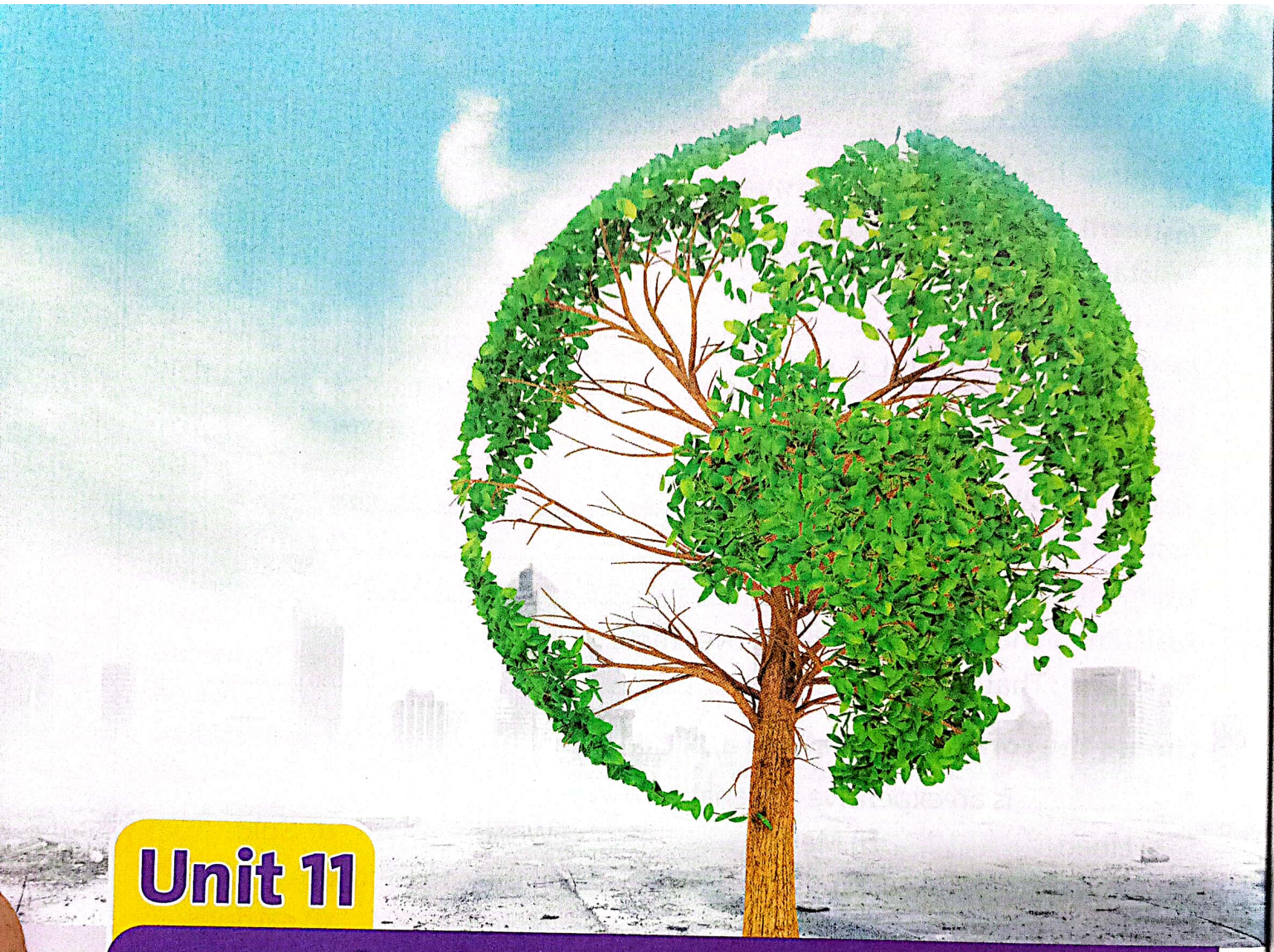
2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. ..... is an expensive material.
   a) Linen b) Metal c) Wood d) Gold
2. All students should wear their ..... when they go to school.
   a) costumes b) uniforms c) gloves d) earrings
3. I've got a present ..... you.
   a) at b) by c) for d) with
4. What ..... of music do you like to listen to?
   a) tool b) band c) item d) type
5. Do you know ..... boys over there?
   a) this b) that c) these d) those
6. I ate ..... for lunch.
   a) green, delicious soup b) delicious, green soup
   c) soup, delicious green d) delicious, soup green

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. He is sitting on a ..... (black /wooden/big) desk.
2. She bought ..... (black/new/a) car.
3. This isn't my dictionary. I have got a bigger ..... (one's).
4. Are ..... (this) your pencils?

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض



Unit 11

The future of our planet

Objectives of the unit

Reading	Online posts about helping the environment; texts about a school trip; an article about teenage inventors; a postcard
Writing	A paragraph about an environmental problem; a holiday postcard
Listening	Identifying what is going to happen; a radio programme about environmental problems; a teacher talking about drones; a discussion about making arrangements
Speaking	Making predictions and future plans; suggesting solutions; giving opinions
Language	*be going to* and the present continuous for the future
Life Skills	Problem solving; Negotiation; Collaboration

Tapescript

SB تشير لأسئلة كتاب الطالب WB تشير لأسئلة كتاب التدريبات

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

STUDY

Watch a video

Lessons 1 & 2

SB pages 44 - 47 | WB pages 100 & 101

A Vocabulary

- قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيدًا لدرجة الإتقان حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.
- قم باختبار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الذهاب لملحق التقويم وتسميع الكلمات الخاصة بالدرسين.

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

alarm clock (n)	منبه	race (n)	سباق
approach (ed) (v)	يقترب من	reuse (d) (v)	يعيد استخدام
environmental (adj)	بيئى	save (d) (v)	ينقذ/يحفظ/يدخر
extra (adj)	إضافى	snow (n)	ثلج
flood (ed) (v/n)	يفيض/فيضان	solar panels (n)	ألواح شمسية
hunter (n)	صياد	solve (d) (v)	يحل
improve (d) (v)	يحسن	storm (n)	عاصفة
install (ed) (v)	يُثَبِّت/يركب	traffic (n)	حركة المرور
local people (n)	السكان المحليون	turn (ed) (v)	يدور
melt (ed) (v)	ينصهر/يذوب	wildlife (n)	الحياة البرية
planet (n)	كوكب	wind turbines (n)	توربينات الرياح

Additional Vocabulary

المفردات الإضافية

because of	بسبب	flour (n)	دقيق
cause (d) (v)	يسبب	online post (n)	منشور عبر الإنترنت
climate change (n)	تغير المناخ	path (n)	ممر
departure (n)	مغادرة/رحيل	radio programme (n)	برنامج إذاعى
equipment (n)	معدات	snoring (n)	صوت الشخير
event (n)	حدث هام	station square (n)	ميدان المحطة
fire (n)	حريق/نار	washing machine (n)	غسالة

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:

(n) = noun | (adj) = adjective | (prep) = preposition
(v) = verb | (adv) = adverb | (conj) = conjunction

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

Check Point

Choose and complete: equipment - save - Flood - climate

1. ..... happens when there is a lot of rain.
2. We should work hard to reduce ..... change.
3. My cousins are trying to ..... money to buy a new bike.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

catch	the bus	يلحق الأتوبيس	install	solar panels	يثبّت ألواحًا شمسية
do	well	يؤدى جيدًا	make	electricity	يولد كهرباء
find	a solution	يجد حلًا		money	يربح مال
get	worse	يزداد سوءًا		predictions	يقوم بتنبؤات
go	trekking	يذهب للترحال	pick up	rubbish	يلتقط القمامة
have	a vote on	يُجرى تصويتًا على			

Prepositions — حروف الجر

based on	قائم على	get off	ينزل (من وسيلة مواصلات)
change into	يتغير إلى/يتحول إلى	go off	يرن (للمنبه)
drive across	يقود عبر	on your own	بمفردك

Check Point

Choose and complete: for - on - find

1. My father is trying to ..... a solution to my brother's problem.
2. I get a lot of money when I work ..... my own.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر.

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs — تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	P.P.
break	يكسر	broke	broken
bring	يُحضر	brought	brought
catch	يلحق بـ	caught	caught
fall down	يقع/يسقط	fell down	fallen down
throw away	يرمى بعيدًا	threw away	thrown away

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

Words and Opposites

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
local	محلى	global	عالمى
reduce	يقلل	increase	يزيد
repair	يصلح	damage	يدمر
unfortunately	لسوء الحظ	fortunately	لحسن الحظ

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية

Adjectives ending in (al)

الصفات المنتهية بـ (al)

Noun		Adjective		Noun		Adjective	
environment	البيئة	environmental	بيئى	nature	الطبيعة	natural	طبيعى
music	الموسيقى	musical	موسيقِى	tradition	التقليد	traditional	تقليدى

- These chemicals cause serious environmental damage.
- Our skin cream contains only natural ingredients.

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ

Definitions

التعريفات

install	يثَبِّت	put equipment somewhere so it is ready to use
reduce	يقلل	make something less in amount or size
repair	يصلح	fix something that is broken
save	ينقذ	make something safe from danger
solar panels	ألواح شمسية	equipment that changes the sun's light into electricity
wind turbines	توربينات الرياح	equipment that uses the wind to make electricity

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

Words and Synonyms

الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
reduce	يقلل	decrease	يقلل
repair	يصلح	fix/mend	يصلح
solve	يحل	answer	يجاوب
unfortunately	لسوء الحظ	unluckily	لسوء الحظ

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
equip (v)	يعد/يجهز	-ment		تحويل الفعل لاسم		equipment (n)	معدات

Prefix البادئة

Prefix	البادئة	Function	الوظيفة	Word	الكلمة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
re-		تعطى معنى الإعادة		use (v)	يستخدام	reuse (v)	يعيد استخدام
un-		تعطى عكس المعنى		fortunately (adj) لحسن الحظ		unfortunately (adj)	لسوء الحظ

هذا الجزء يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المتشابهة فى الهجاء ولكن مختلفة فى المعنى.

Similar Spelling - Different Meaning

Word	الكلمة	Similar word	الكلمة المشابهة
flour	دقيق	floor	طابق/أرضية الغرفة
path	ممر	pass	ينجح/يمر
save	ينقذ/يحفظ/يدخر	safe	آمن
trekking	ترحال/ترجل	tricking	حيلة/خدعة

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

B Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-reading question:

- How can we help the environment?

Read some online posts(1) from teenagers(2) who want to help the environment(3). Match each post with one of the photos from page 44.

Use a dictionary to search for difficult words.

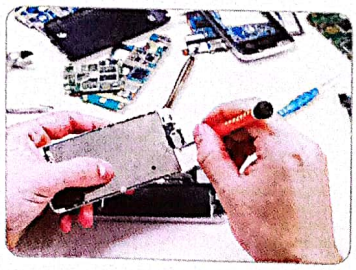
SB Page 45

The rivers in Kaziranga National Park in India often flood(4) and the problem is getting worse because of climate change(5). Later this year, I'm going to help my father to save wildlife from the flood water. This can be dangerous, but my father works in the park and he knows how to keep me safe!

(1) منشورات عبر الإنترنت
(2) مراهقون
(3) البيئة
(4) يفيض
(5) تغير المناخ
(6) تلوث الهواء
(7) حركة المرور
(8) مشروع
(9) يصلح

There's a lot of air pollution(6) from the traffic(7) in our city and this is very unhealthy. Trees are good for the environment and help reduce air pollution - so next week, we're going to plant trees on the roof of our school and make a school roof garden.

I love phones, but I know that throwing away old phones can be bad for the environment. I started a project(8) in school to recycle mobile phones. From tomorrow, people are going to bring us their old phones and we're going to reuse parts from them to repair(9) other phones.



Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

teenager /ti:neɪdʒəʳ/

pollution /pəˈlu:ʃən/

Post-reading question:

- What is the biggest problem that faces our environment?

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

Pre-listening question:

- What are you going to do at the weekend?

Listen and complete the sentences with the correct form of these verbs to say what is going to happen.

SB Page 46

(1) Boy : Oh no! Look at the time! It's 9 o'clock! Come on, quick!

(They are going to be late.)

(2) Girl 1 : The water's a bit cold at first but it's lovely. Come on, Huda! Come and join me!

Girl 2 : OK, I'm coming! *(Huda is going to go swimming.)*

(3) [Sound of snoring then alarm clock ringing. Snoring stops and person wakes up]

(He's going to get up.)

(4) Voice: We are now approaching(1) Station Square.

Boy 1: Is this our stop?

Boy 2: Yes, it is. Come on.

(They are going to get off the bus.)

(5) Commentator: And they're near the finishing line now and suddenly Farida seems to be running faster. Nothing can stop her now. Just look at her go!

(Farida is going to win the race(2).)

(6) Boy : Oh, I'm tired. But it's only nine o'clock!

Woman : Yes, but you've got school in the morning, Omar.

Boy : You're right. Good night, Mum.

(Omar is going to go to bed.)

(1) يقترب من

(2) سباق

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

approach /əproʊtʃ/ suddenly /sʌdənli/

Post-listening question:

- What is Farida going to do?

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

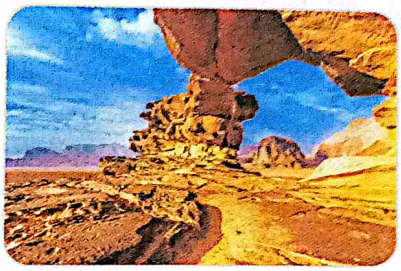
Pre-listening question:

- What do you know about Wadi Rum?

Listen to a radio programme about beautiful places in the world and check your answers to Exercise 4.

SB Page 47

Speaker:



Wadi Rum is a large area of desert in the south of Jordan. It's a very beautiful place with mountains, desert plants and wildlife (1). Unfortunately (2), Wadi Rum has some environmental problems (3).

Tourists help the local people (4) make money, but when tourists go trekking (5) in the desert, they often leave rubbish, too.

Some tourists drive across the desert in cars: they don't use roads or paths, but drive wherever they want to and this can damage plants and wildlife.

The hotels use lots of water which can be a problem in the desert. But they are building new hotels so even more tourists will go there.

Another big problem is hunters who kill the desert animals. They shouldn't do this, but there aren't enough people to stop them. There is much less wildlife now than in the past and soon there won't be any.

(1) الحياة البرية
(2) لسوء الحظ
(3) مشاكل بيئية
(4) السكان المحليون
(5) يذهب للترحال

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

unfortunately /ʌnfɔːrtʃʊnətli/ wildlife /waɪldlaɪf/

Post-listening question:

- In your opinion, how can we save Wadi Rum?

Life Skills

1. Do you think it is best to find solutions to a problem on your own, or as a group? Why?
2. If you work in a group, how can you decide whose solution is the best one?

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering Understanding Applying Analysing Evaluating Creating

Practise more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Please, ... the speed of the car. You are going to crash. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣

a) reduce **b)** increase **c)** produce **d)** introduce

2. We build dams سدود to save us from ..... . بور سعيد ٢٠٢٢

a) storms **b)** earthquakes **c)** pollution **d)** floods

3. The screen of my phone was ..... two days ago. I want a new one. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٣

a) damaged **b)** aged **c)** found **d)** saved

4. My mobile doesn't work, so I asked someone to ..... it. دمياط ٢٠٢٣

a) recycle **b)** repeat **c)** reply **d)** repair

5. There's a lot of air pollution from the ..... in our city. أسيوط ٢٠٢٣

a) water **b)** lake **c)** solar panels **d)** traffic

6. My uncle helped us to ..... a new washing machine this morning. السويس ٢٠٢٣

a) increase **b)** plant **c)** repeat **d)** install

7. In the future, drones are going to help solve some ..... problems.

a) environment **b)** environmental **c)** music **d)** musical

8. ..... use the wind to make electricity. قنا ٢٠٢٣

a) Solar panels **b)** Solar farms **c)** Firefighters **d)** Wind turbines

9. We can ..... the plastic bottles again. سوهاج ٢٠٢٣

a) reuse **b)** reduce **c)** turn **d)** save

10. I saw some ..... people selling fruits at the market. They live nearby.

a) global **b)** natural **c)** local **d)** environmental

11. I think electric cars will help reduce ..... in the future.

a) wildlife **b)** flood **c)** storm **d)** pollution

12. ..... are used to produce electricity. القليوبية ٢٠٢٣

a) Solar panels **b)** Climate change **c)** Coral reefs **d)** Mobile phones

13. My friend ..... me with a smile on her face.

a) approached **b)** proved **c)** improved **d)** installed

14. The zoo is a place where we can see different kinds of ..... .

a) snow **b)** traffic **c)** wildlife **d)** flood

15. ....., Wadi Rum has some environmental problems.

a) Luckily **b)** Unfortunately **c)** Fortunately **d)** Happily

16. I use safety ..... like a helmet and knee pads when riding my bike.

a) flour **b)** flood **c)** equipment **d)** wildlife

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

C Language

(be) going to — سوف

Form التكوين

I	am / am not	+ going to + inf.	المصدر
He, She, It, اسم مفرد	is / isn't		
You, We, They, اسم جمع	are / aren't		

Usage الاستخدام

1 We use (be) going to + inf. to talk about our intentions for the future.

١ـ تستخدم للتعبير عن نية أو قصد لفعل شىء فى المستقبل تم التخطيط له.

- I'm going to **help** my father.
- He isn't going to **travel** to England this year.
- They're going to **try** rock climbing next month.

2 We use (be) going to + inf. to make predictions about the future based on what we can see or know.

٢ـ تستخدم لعمل تنبؤات حول المستقبل بناءً على ما يمكننا رؤيته أو معرفته (تنبؤ بدليل).

- I can see some dark clouds. It is going to **rain**.
- **Watch out!** The baby is going to **fall**.

Question السؤال

1 Yes/No questions:

Am/Is/Are + subject الفاعل + going to + inf. ...?

- Is your sister going to **get** married next year?
- Are you going to spend the summer holiday in Alexandria?

2 Wh-questions:

أداة استفهام + am/is/are + subject الفاعل + going to + inf. ...?

- Where is your brother going to practise football?
- What are you going to study when you go to university?

Got it ? تمكنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 What time ..... (you/going) phone me?

- الإجابة الصحيحة (are you going to) لأنها صيغة سؤال.

2 Sarah made her decision, she ..... (going/come) to the party.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (is going to come) لأن فاعل الجملة مفرد.

3 We ..... (going) watch the match next week because we have a meeting.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (aren't going to) لأن الجملة تعطى معنى النفى.

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

PRACTICE

Language Exercises

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. He has planned to buy a new car. He is ..... it. دمياط ٢٠٢٢
   a) going to do b) do c) done d) be done
2. He isn't going to ..... away his old watch. أزهر ٢٠٢٣
   a) throwing b) threw c) throw d) throws
3. Where ..... going to have a picnic on Saturday?
   a) we will b) will we c) we are d) are we
4. Look at that beautiful sky! It ..... rain today.
   a) is going to b) isn't going to c) will d) won't
5. She is driving carelessly. She ..... have an accident. المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
   a) is going b) will c) won't d) is going to
6. Is Reem going to ..... trekking this afternoon? الغربية ٢٠٢٢
   a) going b) goes c) went d) go
7. Noha is ..... next weekend with her aunt. It's planned. المنوفية ٢٠٢٢
   a) spending b) going to spend c) spent d) spends
8. Dad ..... going to let me play video games all day for a long time.
   a) isn't b) hasn't c) doesn't d) won't
9. We are ..... dinner in a restaurant. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣
   a) have b) will have c) going to have d) to having
10. Next summer holiday, I ..... to take an English course. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
    a) am going b) is going c) are going d) won't going

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I forgot my homework ,my teacher is going to ..... (is) angry. قنا ٢٠٢٣
2. I am ..... (sweep) the floor. I intend to do that. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٢
3. It's cloudy. It ..... (going/rain). سوهاج ٢٠٢٣
4. ..... (going/she) to visit her grandparents next week?
5. Rasha ..... (going to) help her mother tomorrow. She has decided. سوهاج ٢٠٢٣
6. He isn't going to ..... (travelling) abroad this year.

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

PRACTICE

Language Exercises

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. He has planned to buy a new car. He is ..... it. دمياط ٢٠٢٢

a) going to do b) do c) done d) be done

2. He isn't going to ..... away his old watch. أزهر ٢٠٢٣

a) throwing b) threw c) throw d) throws

3. Where ..... going to have a picnic on Saturday?

a) we will b) will we c) we are d) are we

4. Look at that beautiful sky! It ..... rain today.

a) is going to b) isn't going to c) will d) won't

5. She is driving carelessly. She ..... have an accident. المنوفية ٢٠٢٣

a) is going b) will c) won't d) is going to

6. Is Reem going to ..... trekking this afternoon? الغربية ٢٠٢٢

a) going b) goes c) went d) go

7. Noha is ..... next weekend with her aunt. It's planned. المنوفية ٢٠٢٢

a) spending b) going to spend c) spent d) spends

8. Dad ..... going to let me play video games all day for a long time.

a) isn't b) hasn't c) doesn't d) won't

9. We are ..... dinner in a restaurant. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣

a) have b) will have c) going to have d) to having

10. Next summer holiday, I ..... to take an English course. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣

a) am going b) is going c) are going d) won't going

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I forgot my homework ,my teacher is going to ..... (is) angry. قنا ٢٠٢٣

2. I am ..... (sweep) the floor. I intend to do that. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٢

3. It's cloudy. It ..... (going/rain). سوهاج ٢٠٢٣

4. ..... (going/she) to visit her grandparents next week?

5. Rasha ..... (going to) help her mother tomorrow. She has decided. سوهاج ٢٠٢٣

6. He isn't going to ..... (travelling) abroad this year.

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

D Skills

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.

1. Speaking

Making predictions and future plans

عمل تنبؤات وخطط مستقبلية

Situation ما يقال فى هذا الموقف **Response** جملة الرد

online

What are you going to do at the weekend?
ماذا سوف تفعل فى العطلة الأسبوعية؟

I'm going to visit my grandparents.
سوف أزور أجدادى.

How are you going to improve your English?
كيف ستطور لغتك الإنجليزية؟

I'm going to have holiday courses.
سأقوم بالحصول على دورات تدريبية صيفية.

Are you going to recycle your mobile phone when it's old?
هل ستقوم بإعادة تصنيع هاتفك عندما يصبح قديمًا؟

Sure. I'm going to reuse old parts from it to repair other phones.
بالتأكيد. سوف أقوم بإعادة استخدام أجزاء منه لإصلاح هواتف أخرى.

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialogue:

Sama and Rana are preparing themselves to go to the party. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣

Sama : Will you go to the party tonight?

Rana : (1)..... .

Sama : What are you going to wear for the party?

Rana : (2)..... .

Sama : Oh! I really like that blue dress.

Rana : Thanks. (3).....?

Sama : I am going to wear my favourite red dress.

Rana : Wow! (4).....?

Sama : We'll meet at 6 p.m.

Rana : (5)..... .

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

2. Write it right

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.

How to help the environment

كيفية مساعدة البيئة

- Our natural environment gives us everything that we need.
- We get (ما نحصل عليه من البيئة) from the environment.
- We can save the environment by ... (طرق الحفاظ على البيئة)
- We should never ... (ما لا يجب فعله).
- We can recycle many things instead of throwing them away.
- Trees are good for the environment and help reduce air pollution.

Writing tips

Use varied sentence patterns in your writing. There should be both long and short sentences.

استخدم نماذج متنوعة من الجمل. يجب أن تكون هناك جمل طويلة وأخرى قصيرة فى الفقرة.

Example

The environment

Our natural environment gives us everything that we need. We get air, water, food and many other things from the environment. We can save the environment by making sure that we take care of nature. We should save water. Water is very important in our environment, so we should never pollute it. We can recycle many things instead of throwing them away. Trees are good for the environment and help reduce air pollution. We should plant more trees. This will help to improve the size of natural places for animals. We should teach our children to look after the environment.

Check Point

Write a paragraph on:

"How to save the environment"

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

1. Where is Kaziranga National Park?
   a) In France. b) In Egypt. c) In India. d) In China.
2. What do the rivers often do there?
   a) Dry. b) Flood. c) Rain. d) Snow.
3. What is the reason for that?
   a) Sun. b) Storm. c) Climate change. d) Wind.
4. What are you going to do?
   a) Swim. b) Eat fruit. c) Keep safe. d) Save wildlife.

2 Complete the following dialogue: أسيوط ٢٠٢٢

Hana is travelling to the USA to take a summer holiday course.

Nayera : What are you going to do during the summer holiday?
Hana : (1)..... .
Nayera : (2).....?
Hana : To take a summer holiday course.
Nayera : (3).....?
Hana : I am going to stay for two months.
Nayera : When are you going to travel?
Hana : (4)..... .
Nayera : Could you send me photos when you are there?
Hana : (5)..... .

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Storms and floods are ..... disasters كوارث. بورسعيد ٢٠٢٣
   a) nature b) traditional c) musical d) natural
2. The ..... caught a lot of animals from the forest. سوهاج ٢٠٢٣
   a) fisherman b) hunter c) writer d) vet
3. The ..... caused a lot of damage to the trees and houses.
   a) storm b) equipment c) wildlife d) phones
4. ....., the ice cream shop was closed when we got there.
   a) Unnaturally b) Unfortunately c) Unhealthily d) Unpopularly
5. Many cars on the road cause more ..... . بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣
   a) storms b) pollution c) earthquakes d) floods

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

6. I saw my uncle a short time ago before his ..... for China. He'll be back in 3 weeks.
a) nature b) departure c) arrival d) future

7. The teacher asked us to ..... predictions about life in 2050.
a) do b) make c) have d) catch

8. We are ..... travel to Aswan next summer. أسيوط ٢٠٢٢
a) go to b) going to c) goes to d) going

9. Mary's hair is too long. She ..... it. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
a) will cut b) cutting c) going to cut d) is going to cut

10. Where are you ..... to go for your weekend? الجيزة ٢٠٢٢
a) going b) go c) gone d) goes

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Mr. Sherif ..... (be) going to travel to England in January. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣
2. I'm going to ..... (helping) my brother with homework. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣
3. She is going ..... (spend) a week in Alex.
4. The boy ..... (going/watch) a football match tomorrow. بور سعيد ٢٠٢٣

5 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"What you are going to do next summer holiday" بورسعيد ٢٠٢٣

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Challenging Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب

1. How many ..... are there in our solar system?
a) planets b) plants c) pants d) boots

2. My sister and I ..... going to build a sandcastle at the beach.
a) am b) is c) are d) be

3. The sky is dark, do you think it ..... rain?
a) will b) going to c) go to d) is going to

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

STUDY

Watch a video

Lessons 3 & 4

A Vocabulary

SB pages 48 - 50 | WB pages 102 & 103

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

array (n)	مجموعة/مصفوفة	liquid (n)	سائل
bacteria (n)	بكتيريا	mangrove (n)	شجرة المنجروف
chemistry (n)	الكيمياء	microorganisms (n)	كائنات دقيقة
conservation (n)	الحفاظ على	midday (n)	منتصف النهار
decay (ed) (v)	يتحلل/يتعفن	ocean (n)	محيط
develop (ed) (v)	يطور	pollute (d) (v)	يلوث
drone (n)	طائرة بدون طيار	remote control (n)	جهاز التحكم عن بعد
environment-friendly (adj)	صديق للبيئة	seed (n)	بذرة
film (ed) (v/n)	يصور فيلمًا/فيلم	suitcase (n)	حقيبة سفر
filter (n)	فلتر (جهاز للتنقية)	system (n)	نظام
forest (n)	غابة	trainers (n)	مدربون
jungle (n)	أدغال	volunteer (n)	متطوع

Additional Vocabulary

المفردات الإضافية

coral reefs (n)	شعاب مرجانية	irrigate (d) (v)	يروى
determine (ed) (v)	يحدد/يعقد العزم	location (n)	موقع
diary (n)	مذكرات/يوميات	organised (adj)	منظم
diving (n)	الغطس	recycling bin (n)	سلة القمامة
farmland (n)	أرض زراعية	share (d) (v)	يشارك
forever (adv)	إلى الأبد	text message (n)	رسالة نصية
forms (n)	أشكال/ أنواع	tools (n)	أدوات
invention (n)	اختراع	trip (n)	رحلة

Check Point

Choose and complete: drone – share – irrigate - decays

1. Plastic never ..... . It stays in the environment forever.
2. Farmers ..... their fields a lot in summer.
3. A ..... is a plane that flies without a pilot.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

complete	a form	يكمل استمارة	make	deliveries	يوصل طلبات
irrigate	the land	يروى الأرض		noise	يقوم بعمل ضوضاء
present	solutions	يقدم حلولًا	see	a play	يشاهد مسرحية

Prepositions — حروف الجر

according to	طبقًا لـ	in what ways	بأى الطرق
better for	أفضل لـ	leave for	يغادر لـ/يسافر إلى
connected to	متصل بـ	look after	يهتم/يعتنى بـ
drop onto	يُلقى على	take part in	يشارك فى
go on a trip	يذهب فى رحلة	work on a project	يعمل فى مشروع
take out	يخرج	instead of	بدلًا من

Check Point

Choose and complete: in - part - on - complete

1. They asked me to ..... a form to apply for the job.
2. I'd like to take ..... in the school football team.
3. We are going ..... a trip next week.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر.

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs — تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	P.P.	Present		Past simple	P.P.
meet	يقابل	met	met	lend	يسلف	lent	lent

Words and Opposites — الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
simple	بسيط	complex	معقد
suitable	مناسب	unsuitable	غير مناسب

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية

1 see/watch/hear + obj. مفعول + (v + ing/inf.)

- Deepika saw children drinking water from a dirty canal.

2 look forward to (n./v + ing)

- I'm really looking forward to **our holidays**!
- Sara looks forward to **studying** medicine.

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ

Definitions — التعريفات

bacteria	بكتيريا	microorganisms that are everywhere but are too small to see and can make you ill
chemicals	مواد كيميائية	things you can make in chemistry
filters	الفلاتر	tools that take things out of liquids such as water
green	أخضر/نظيف للبيئة	good for the environment
location	موقع	the place or position of a particular area of land
system	نظام	an organised way of doing something

Words and Synonyms — الكلمات ومرادفها

Word — الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning) — مرادفها
suitable — مناسب	appropriate — مناسب/ملائم
look after — يعتنى بـ	care about — يهتم بـ

Suffix اللاحقة

Word — الكلمة	Suffix — اللاحقة	Function — الوظيفة	The new word — الكلمة الجديدة
invent (v) — يخترع	-ion	تحويل الفعل لاسم	invention (n) — اختراع
suit (v) — يناسب	-able	تحويل الفعل لصفة	suitable (adj) — مناسب

هذا الجزء يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المتشابهة فى الهجاء ولكن مختلفة فى المعنى.

Similar Spelling - Different Meaning

Word — الكلمة	Similar word — الكلمة المشابهة
bin — سلة القمامة	pin — دبوس
conservation — الحفاظ على	conversation — محادثة
diary — مذكرات/يوميات	dairy — ألبان

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 3

Pre-listening question: - How can we help stop air pollution?

Listen to a science teacher talking about drones and check your answers to Exercise 1.

SB Page 48

Scientist Drones (1) can fly, but they don't need a person to fly them: we can use remote control (2). This means we can control (3) drones from the ground. In the future, drones are going to help solve some environmental problems.

(1) طائرات بدون طيار
(2) جهاز التحكم عن بعد
(3) يتحكم فى
(4) البيئة
(5) فيضانات

Boy Really? How can we do that?

Scientist Well, companies are going to use drones a lot instead of lorries to make deliveries. This is going to help the environment (4) because drones don't make much noise and they don't cause as much air pollution as lorries.

Boy That's interesting.

Scientist Yes, and we are also going to use drones to help wildlife. Drones can fly over places where people can't go. We can see if there are any problems. For example, we can use drones to help save wildlife after floods (5) or fires.

Boy Can they help people, too?

Scientist Of course! We can send drones to dangerous places. For example, we are starting to use drones to check wind turbines. This is not an easy job. Wind energy is much better for the environment and makes less pollution. We can even use drones to plant trees. Drones can drop seeds onto the ground in places that people can't go to. And they don't need to stop and have a rest!

Post-listening question: - How do you think drones will help us?

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

Pre-reading question:

- What do you know about Ras Mohammed Nature Reserve? And what do you think you can see and do there?

Read the letter and text message about a school trip to Ras Mohammad. Use a dictionary if you don't know the meaning of a word.

SB Page 49

Dear parents

The bus will be leaving for Ras Mohammad from the school tomorrow at 6.30 am and returning in five days' time at 12.30 pm on Thursday 11th June.

Please make sure that your daughter has suitable clothes for the swimming and diving trips to the coral reefs (1) on Monday and Tuesday. They will also need good trainers (2) and a sunhat (3) for the visit to the mangrove (4) forest on Wednesday. We will be taking part in the conservation project (5) in the mangrove forest and helping to plant new trees.

(1) شعاب مرجانية
(2) أحذية رياضية
(3) قبعة شمس
(4) شجرة المنجروف
(5) مشروع الحفاظ على البيئة
(6) يسلف
(7) حقيبة سفر

Hi, Laila

We aren't sharing a room.
Mrs Nagwa says that the older students have to help look after the younger girls. Can we meet at the school gates tomorrow morning at 6 am? I need to give you the trainers I'm lending (6) you so that you can put them in your suitcase (7).

Habiba

Post-reading question:

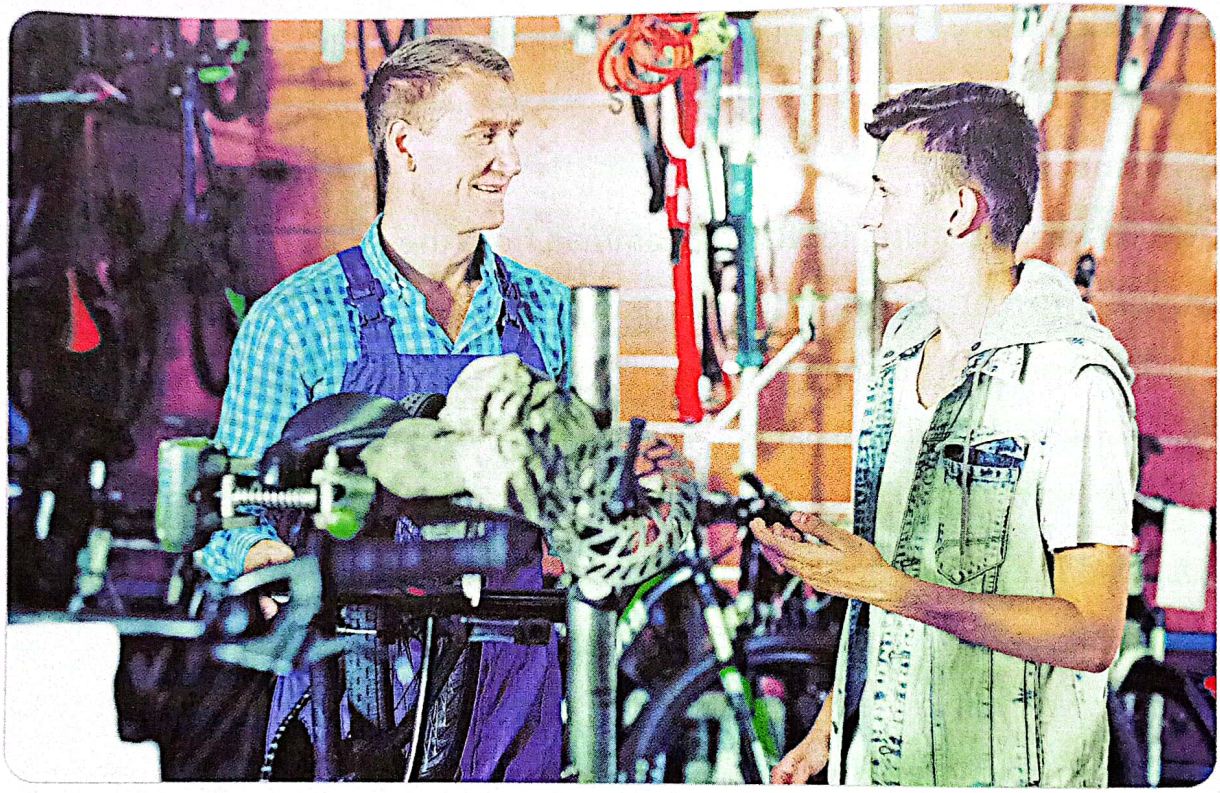
- In your opinion, how will Habiba's trip be?

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

Pre-listening question:

- What are you going to do this evening?

Listen and complete Khaled's diary. WB Page 102



Khaled It's 12 o'clock on Saturday, but I'm going to be busy for the next few days. So, what am I doing? This evening, I'm going to the theatre to see a play. Then tomorrow, I'm playing basketball in the park. The day after tomorrow, I'm helping my uncle in his shop after school. Then, next Saturday, we're taking my cousins to the desert. That should be fun. But I'm really looking forward to our holidays! We're flying to Greece, but that's in nine days' time. I can't wait!

Post-listening question: - When is Khaled going to go to the desert?

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

Pre-reading question:

- Plastic is bad for the environment, what can you do to help in solving this problem?

Read the article and check your answers to Exercise 1. *SB page 50*

Fantastic green inventions by teenagers

Green inventions are environment-friendly(1). These inventions present solutions to environmental problems without damaging the environment.

Boyan Slat was a student in Holland when he invented a system to take plastic rubbish from the sea. There is a lot of plastic in our seas, which kills(2) lots of wildlife(3). Boyan's system is called Ocean Cleanup Array(4).

It uses machines whose arms have lots of filters(5) on them. These filters take the plastic out of the sea water, without(6) hurting sea life.

Deepika Kurup was 14 when she invented a green system for cleaning water and making it safe for people to drink.

When she visited her grandparents in India, Deepika saw children drinking water from a dirty canal(7). Before this, systems for cleaning water were expensive and used dangerous chemicals(8) which pollute(9) the environment. Deepika's system is cheap and uses light from the sun to kill bacteria(10) in water.

Five Egyptian students from STEM Schools were able to develop an app to help small farmers save water and energy. In this app, farmers complete a simple form with information about their farmlands. This form is connected to a smart app which tells farmers the right amount of water that they need to irrigate their lands. The app also determines the amount of energy and the number of workers the lands need, according to their location and the season.

(1) صديق للبيئة
(2) يقتل
(3) الحياة البرية
(4) مجموعة تنظيف المحيط
(5) فلاتر (أجهزة للتنقية)
(6) بدون
(7) قناة
(8) مواد كيميائية
(9) يلوث
(10) بكتيريا

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

ocean /ˈəʊʃən/ determine /dɪtɜːrmɪn/

Post-reading question:

- What other environmental problems in the world do we need green inventions to help us solve?

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Don't drink water from a canal because it can be full of ..... . أسيوط ٢٠٢٢

a) salt **b)** sugar **c)** bacteria **d)** light

2. T-shirts and jeans are not ..... for the party. القليوبية ٢٠٢٣

a) suitable **b)** suitcase **c)** cheap **d)** suit

3. A lot of animals live in the ..... forests next to the sea. المنوفية ٢٠٢٢

a) mangrove **b)** drone **c)** gloves **d)** mountains

4. It's easy now to change the TV channels using a ..... control. سوهاج ٢٠٢٣

a) fast **b)** remote **c)** low **d)** tall

5. The earth is the ..... where we all live.

a) plant **b)** star **c)** sky **d)** planet

6. Students from STEM schools were able to ..... an app to help small farmers.

a) buy **b)** develop **c)** save **d)** send

7. The Red Sea is full of colourful ..... . الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢

a) pets **b)** canals **c)** deserts **d)** coral reefs

8. I planted a ..... in the soil and watered it every day.

a) seed **b)** system **c)** trip **d)** jungle

9. ..... are very small living things that we can't see with our eyes alone.

a) Solutions **b)** Microorganisms **c)** Tools **d)** Forms

10. I ..... to finish the report today, and I did it.

a) developed **b)** filmed **c)** determined **d)** polluted

11. I decided to join the ..... project to help the environment. المنوفية ٢٠٢٣

a) conservation **b)** conversation **c)** ocean **d)** liquid

12. A/An ..... is someone who works for no money. أزهر ٢٠٢٣

a) engineer **b)** volunteer **c)** teacher **d)** patient

13. I like to go ..... to see coral reefs. أسيوط ٢٠٢٣

a) riding **b)** walking **c)** diving **d)** sailing

14. Today, some people use ..... to film dangerous places.

a) tools **b)** alarms **c)** drones **d)** pilots

15. Tools that take things out of liquids are ..... . المنوفية ٢٠٢٣

a) system **b)** bacteria **c)** chemicals **d)** filters

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

C Language

The present continuous tense زمن المضارع المستمر

Form التكوين

I → am (not)
He, She, It, اسم مفرد → is (n't)
You, We, They, اسم جمع → are (n't)
+ inf. + ing

Usage الاستخدام

We use the present continuous for future plans and arrangements, often with a time and date.

نستخدم المضارع المستمر للخطط والترتيبات المستقبلية، غالبًا مع الوقت والتاريخ (الشىء المرتب له مسبقًا).

- **I'm visiting** the dentist at half past four next Thursday.
- On Sunday, **he isn't meeting** his friends.
- **We're catching** a train to Tanta. We **aren't taking** the bus.

Question السؤال

1 Yes/No questions:

Am/Is/Are + subject الفاعل + inf. + ing ...?

- **Are** they **visiting** their aunt the day after tomorrow?
- **Is** your father **travelling** to London in two weeks' time?

2 Wh- questions:

Q- Word أداة الاستفهام + am/is/are + subject الفاعل + inf. + ing ...?

- What **are** you **doing** this afternoon?
- Where **is** Nader **travelling** next week?

Got it ?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 What ..... (you/doing) on Friday evening?

- الإجابة الصحيحة (are you doing) لأنها صيغة سؤال والفاعل you وقد تم ذكر وقت محدد.

2 Rami ..... (meet) Samy on Friday to play football as arranged.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (is meeting) لأن الفاعل مفرد والجملة تشير إلى ترتيب فى المستقبل.

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

PRACTICE

Language Exercises

Remembering Understanding Applying Analysing Evaluating Creating

Practise more

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We ..... a party on Friday night. Would you like to come?
   a) having **b)** has **c)** are having **d)** going to have
2. My uncle ..... to Paris next week. المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
   a) is travelling **b)** going to travel **c)** travelling **d)** travel
3. I ..... out on Saturday. I'm staying home.
   a) am going **b)** am going to **c)** am not going **d)** not going
4. I ..... the dentist at half past four next Thursday. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣
   a) am visiting **b)** visit **c)** visiting **d)** visited
5. Mum ..... cookies today; we have enough snacks.
   a) is making **b)** isn't making **c)** doesn't make **d)** makes
6. They ..... a picnic in the park this weekend. It's arranged.
   a) have **b)** had **c)** going to have **d)** are having
7. I'm sorry. We can't come at 10 o'clock. We ..... a vet because of our cat. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) are meeting **b)** meet **c)** met **d)** going to meet
8. I'm leaving very early tomorrow. I ..... the 7:30 train.
   a) takes **b)** took **c)** am taking **d)** going to take
9. I ..... a book before bedtime tonight.
   a) going to read **b)** reads **c)** reading **d)** am reading
10. My cousin ..... Japanese at the University next year.
    a) studies **b)** is studying **c)** going to study **d)** study

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. At the moment, I ..... (stay) at a small hotel near the lake. المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
2. I ..... (travel) to Aswan. I have booked the tickets. المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
3. Sally and Hend ..... (be) flying to Paris on Tuesday evening.
4. The bus is ..... (leave) in ten minutes' time. أسيوط ٢٠٢٣
5. I ..... (visit) the dentist at 4:30 next Thursday. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
6. What are you ..... (do) this afternoon? بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

D Skills

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.

Write it right

1. How to write about environmental problems

كيفية الكتابة عن المشاكل البيئية

Example

"Environmental problems"

The environment is the place where we all live. But there are some problems that damage life on our planet, the earth. The main problems are pollution and global warming which cause climate change. Our daily activities damage the environment. We can use technology to solve some of these problems. For example, when we use electric cars, air pollution will be reduced because these cars don't pollute the environment. Water pollution is also a serious problem. In the future, we may use a system that can filter water to make it clean and kill bacteria in water. Furthermore, we can recycle most of our rubbish that damages the environment.

2. How to write about holidays:

كيفية الكتابة عن الإجازات:

Example

To : batool@gmail.com **From** : basmala@gmail.com

Subject : A fantastic holiday

Dear Batool,

Greetings! How are you and your family? I hope you are in good health. I'm very happy to write this email to you. I'm excited to tell you about my fantastic holiday. I had a great time. I had an amazing holiday in Siwa. It has the best places to visit. I saw the strange ruins of the Shali Fortress. I walked along the sandy road. I finished my day by taking a dive at Cleopatra's Pool. I didn't forget to buy some souvenirs on my way. I also visited the Siwa House Museum. I'm looking forward to seeing you. Best wishes.

Yours, Basmala

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

1 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Drones can fly, but they don't need a person to fly **them**. We can use a remote control. This means we can control drones from the ground. In the future, drones are going to help solve some environmental problems. Companies are going to use drones instead of lorries to make deliveries. This is going to help the environment because drones don't cause as much air pollution as lorries. We are also going to use drones to help wildlife. Drones can fly over places where people can't go. We can see if there are any problems. For example, we can use drones to help **save** wildlife after floods or fires.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Give a suitable title for this passage. .....
2. What does the underlined pronoun "**them**" refer to? .....
3. How do you think drones are going to help the environment? .....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. We can fly drones by using a ..... .
   a) copilot **b)** pilot **c)** phone **d)** remote control
5. The opposite of the word "**save**" is ..... .
   a) rescue **b)** harm **c)** help **d)** keep
6. Drones are very ..... .
   a) helpless **b)** useless **c)** useful **d)** dangerous

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Turning off the lights when we don't need them is a way of ..... .
   a) wildlife **b)** invention **c)** conservation **d)** environment
2. We ..... a funny video of our dog chasing its tail.
   a) connected **b)** contacted **c)** communicated **d)** filmed
3. The water in this lake is used to ..... many fields.
   a) kill **b)** clean **c)** irrigate **d)** invent
4. Dad uses the remote ..... to open the garage door without getting out of the car.
   a) control **b)** filter **c)** system **d)** style
5. How many planets are there in our solar .....?
   a) control **b)** system **c)** drone **d)** jungle

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

6. ..... is an exciting sport that lets us discover the ocean.
a) Diving b) Driving c) Developing d) Decaying

7. ..... is a large field where farmers grow crops.
a) Filter b) Seed c) Ocean d) Farmland

8. He can't answer the phone. He ..... at the moment. أسيوط ٢٠٢٣
a) study b) to study c) studied d) is studying

9. We are ..... our grandparents next month.
a) visits b) visited c) visiting d) visit

10. Dad ..... the car today; he'll do it tomorrow.
a) is fixing b) isn't fixing c) fixes d) don't fix

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Is the teacher ..... (read) us a storybook in class tomorrow?
2. We ..... (eat) at a fantastic restaurant tonight. Nader has prepared everything.
3. He's ..... (save) money because he wants to buy a car.
4. I ..... (help) my dad with the garden after school today.

4 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"Environmental problems"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Challenging Questions

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب

1. I can't meet you because I ..... (travel) to Hurghada.
2. We ..... (go) to the park. It's arranged.
3. Watch out! You ..... (fall).
4. I ..... (meet) my friend at the new restaurant at five.

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

STUDY

Watch a video

Lessons 5 & 6

SB pages 51 & 53 | WB pages 104 & 106

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

bird watching (n)	مشاهدة الطيور	rock climbing (n)	تسلق الصخور
bungee jumping (n)	القفز بالمطاط	ruins (n)	أطلال
dates (n)	بلح	salt lake (n)	بحيرة مالحة
fortress (n)	قلعة/حصن	sandboarding (n)	التزلج على الرمال
horse riding (n)	ركوب الخيل	snorkelling (n)	السباحة بأنبوبة تنفس
hot-air ballooning (n)	ركوب منطاد الهواء الساخن	star gazing (n)	النظر للنجوم
postcard (n)	بطاقة بريدية	temple (n)	معبد

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

actually (adv)	فى الواقع/حقًا	guess (ed) (v)	يخمن
beginner (n)	مبتدئ	hotel (n)	فندق
fishing (n)	صيد السمك	towel (n)	منشفة/فوطة

Check Point

Choose and complete:

riding - driving - postcard

1. I sent a ..... to my friend on his birthday.
2. I like horse ..... in the Pyramids.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

get > cold/ bored	يشعر بالبرد/بالملل	make > arrangements	يتخذ ترتيبات
miss > a lesson	يفوت حصة	one last thing	شىء واحد أخير
make > dinner	يعد العشاء	the day before yesterday	أول أمس

Prepositions — حروف الجر

arrive at	يصل إلى	help with	يساعد فى
by the water	بجوار الماء	stay on the boat	يبقى على القارب
for breakfast	على الإفطار	walk towards	يمشى تجاه

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

Check Point

Choose and complete: do – make – missed – stay

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر.

1. He was ill and ..... some lessons.
2. I can't dive, so I'll ..... on the boat.
3. Sherif phoned me to ..... some arrangements for the next weekend.

Words and Opposites

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
afraid	خائف	brave	شجاع
bored	يشعر بالملل	excited	متحمس
exciting	مثير/شيق	boring	ممل
positive	إيجابى	negative	سلبى

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

go + activities with (ing) يذهب لـ

- go (snorkelling – rock climbing – horse riding, etc.)
- I like to go **sandboarding**.

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ

Words and Synonyms

الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
afraid	خائف	frightened	خائف

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
actual (adj)	واقعى	-ly		تحويل الصفة لحال		actually (adv)	فى الواقع
begin (v)	يبدأ	-er		تحويل الفعل لاسم فاعل		beginner (n)	مبتدئ

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

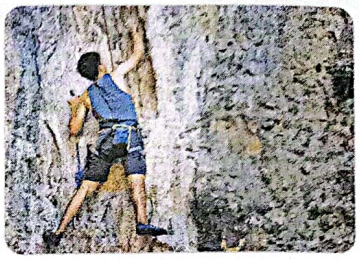
B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 5

Pre-listening question:

- What activities do you like doing in the desert?

Listen to three teenagers making arrangements. Which two of the activities from Exercise 1 do they talk about? SB Page 51



(1) تسلق الصخور .....

(2) مخيف .....

(3) خائف .....

(4) النظر للنجوم

Kamal Hi Amir. What are you doing this afternoon? I'm going rock climbing[1]. There is a special activity for beginners. Would you like to come?

Amir I don't know. Rock climbing looks a bit scary[2] to me! Are you going, Nasser?

Nasser Yes! I've always wanted to learn rock climbing! Oh, come on, don't be afraid[3], Amir!

Amir Actually, I can't come this afternoon; I'm helping my father with something.

Kamal How about tomorrow afternoon instead? There's another rock climbing activity then at the same time.

Amir OK! I'll come. You're right. It might be fun. Also, I wanted to ask you something: are you and Nasser free this evening?

Nasser I think so. Why?

Amir Dad is going to take me star gazing[4] into the desert with my brother Ramy and Uncle Sami and he said I could invite you, too.

Kamal Thank you. We'd love to come, wouldn't we, Nasser? I'd love to go to the desert at night. Is your brother Ramy going?

Amir No, he doesn't want to. He thinks he'd get cold and bored!

Nasser Well, I think it sounds really exciting!

Amir Great! We're meeting outside my house at half past ten. See you then.

Note:

gazing /geɪzɪŋ/ تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمة التالية:

Post-listening question: - What's Amir's dad going to do?

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

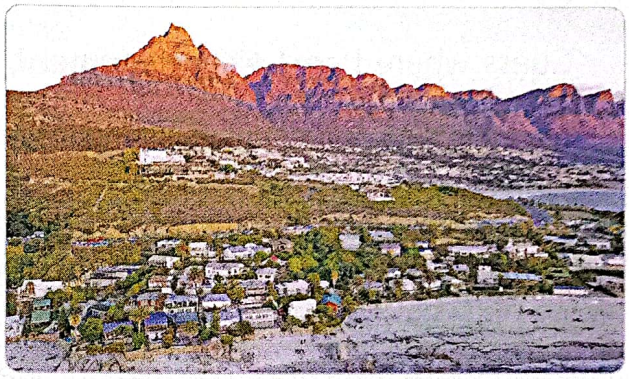
Pre-reading question:

- Where would you like to spend your next holiday?

Read the postcard and answer the questions. SB Page 52

Dear Nahla,

I'm having a fantastic time with my family in Siwa. Today, we had a picnic on Fatanas Island (1). At the moment, I'm sitting by the water and watching the sunset. It's very beautiful.



We're staying with my parents' friends and they are very kind. When we arrived the day before yesterday, it was very late. They still wanted to get up and make us dinner, and they bring us fresh dates (2) for breakfast every day.

Yesterday morning, we visited Shali Fortress (3) and the Siwa museum. I've always wanted to go there. I learnt such a lot of history in one morning.

Tomorrow, we're going to visit the Siwa salt lake (4). I'm looking forward to visiting it. It sounds really interesting.

Lots of love

Heba

(1) جزيرة فطناس

(2) بلح طازج

(3) قلعة/ حصن

(4) بحيرة مالحة

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمة التالية:

Island /ˈaɪlənd/ fortress /fɔːrtrɪs/

Post-reading question:

- Make a list of all the places that people can visit in Siwa.

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

Lesson 6

Pre-reading question:

- What are you going to do in ten minutes' time?

Read Hamdi's email and circle the correct time expressions from Exercise 1.

WB page 105

Hi

Guess where I am? **At the moment**, I'm walking in the desert in the Nabq Nature Reserve. It's really interesting.

Yesterday, we visited the mountains. It was very hot! **The day before yesterday**, we went diving in the coral reefs at Shoura al Manquata. The fish were amazing. **Tomorrow**, we're going to visit Wadi Kid. I'm looking forward to seeing the beautiful birds that live there. We're coming home **in three days' time**.

What are you doing? Write to me and tell me your news.

Best wishes, **Hamdi**

Post-reading question: - What does Hamdi want to see at Wadi Kid?

Lesson 7

Write a reply to the text message in your notebook.

SB page 53

Hi

Are you busy? What are you doing this afternoon?

Please could you call me later because I need some help with the English homework! I had to go to the dentist, so I missed the last English lesson. What did you study in English class last week?

One last thing – are you free on Saturday morning?

I'm playing tennis in the park. Would you like to come?

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering Understanding Applying Analysing Evaluating Creating

Practise more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Have you tried horse ..... before? الغربية ٢٠٢٣
   a) diving **b)** watching **c)** riding **d)** climbing
2. I like star ..... at night. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٢
   a) climbing **b)** gazing **c)** collecting **d)** riding
3. Rock climbing looks a bit ..... to me. المنوفية ٢٠٢٢
   a) awake **b)** asleep **c)** strong **d)** scary
4. When tourists go ..... in the desert, they leave rubbish there. المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
   a) swimming **b)** trekking **c)** diving **d)** sailing
5. ..... are the parts of a building that is left after the rest has been destroyed. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) Ruins **b)** Walls **c)** Blocks **d)** Roofs
6. I ..... the answer and it was right.
   a) stayed **b)** guessed **c)** called **d)** missed
7. I always use a cotton ..... after having a shower.
   a) trousers **b)** socks **c)** scarf **d)** towel
8. I'll finish my homework soon, and then I can ..... you later.
   a) call **b)** miss **c)** talk **d)** speak
9. Tomorrow is my birthday party, and we need to ..... some arrangements.
   a) get **b)** miss **c)** make **d)** do
10. Can you help me ..... my homework?
    a) with **b)** at **c)** for **d)** of
11. I'm ..... . Let's find something fun to do together.
    a) boring **b)** bored **c)** excited **d)** exciting
12. Let's look at the bright side and think of ..... things.
    a) lazy **b)** ugly **c)** negative **d)** positive
13. It's important to stay ..... the boat when you go sailing.
    a) on **b)** at **c)** in **d)** for
14. Fatanas is a beautiful ..... in Siwa.
    a) iceland **b)** island **c)** city **d)** lake
15. I love birds. I want to go ..... .
    a) bird watching **b)** fishing **c)** diving **d)** swimming
16. I usually have beans and cheese ..... breakfast.
    a) for **b)** on **c)** in **d)** to

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.

Speaking

Suggestion and invitation

الاقتراح والدعوة

- **Would you like to** + inf.? — هل تود أن .....؟
- **Why don't you** + inf.? — لَم لا .....؟
- **You could** + inf. — يمكنك ..... .
- **What about** + v.ing? — ماذا عن .....؟

Accepting: — قبول الاقتراح/الدعوة

- Yes, that/ it might be fun. — سيكون هذا ممتعًا.
- Great! Let's do that. — عظيم. هيا نفعل ذلك.
- Thanks, I'd love to. — أشكرك. أود ذلك.
- I think it sounds/looks really exciting! — أعتقد أن هذا يبدو مثيرًا حقًا.

Refusing: — رفض الدعوة/الاقتراح

- I think I'd get cold and bored. — أعتقد بأننى سأشعر بالملل والبرد.
- It looks a bit scary to me! — يبدو هذا مخيفًا لى.
- I'd love to do that, but ... — أود فعل ذلك ولكن ....

Not sure: — عدم التأكد

- I don't know. — أنا لا أعرف.
- I'm not sure. — لست متأكدًا من ذلك.

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialogue:

Sally is suggesting going to the park.

Sally : Hi Sandy, why don't you come to the park with me?
Sandy : (1)..... .
Sally : Great! (2)..... .
Sandy : Sorry, we can't meet at 3 o'clock. I am seeing a doctor. Can we go later?
Sally : (3)..... . How about 4 o'clock?
Sandy : Sounds perfect! See you at 4 then.
Sally : (4).....?
Sandy : Yes, I'd love to, but I can't have ice cream because it's unhealthy.
Sally : Don't worry. (5).....?
Sandy : That's a good idea. I like sandwiches.

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Waleed is inviting Said to play video games.

Waleed : Would you like to come over to my house and play video games?
Said : (1)..... .
Waleed : Awesome! My mum said we could have some pizza, too.
Said : (2)..... !
Waleed : (3)..... ?
Said : That's a great idea! Mesbah and Soliman will accept the invitation.
Waleed : (4)..... ?
Said : Yes, of course! I'll bring my laptop.
Waleed : (5)..... .
Said : Great! We'll meet at 7 pm.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. He likes flying, so he wants to try ..... .
   a) hot-air ballooning **b)** bird watching
   c) gazing **d)** riding
2. Every teenager looks ..... to having a modern mobile phone.
   a) after **b)** forward **c)** towards **d)** for
3. He wasn't at school yesterday, so he ..... an important English lesson.
   a) had **b)** won **c)** missed **d)** lost
4. I'd like to go to the desert to enjoy ..... .
   a) diving **b)** bungee jumping **c)** sandboarding **d)** ballooning
5. When she sees a/an ..... film at night, she can't sleep easily.
   a) scary **b)** scared **c)** exciting **d)** amazing
6. To go diving means to go ..... the water.
   a) over **b)** above **c)** by **d)** under
7. When I was in Luxor, I sent ..... to my best friends.
   a) statues **b)** postcards **c)** balloons **d)** temples

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

8. They are ..... a new shopping mall tomorrow.
a) open b) opens c) opened d) opening

9. Why ..... playing football tomorrow?
a) isn't he b) he isn't c) he won't d) won't he

10. All preparations were made, Adel ..... a wedding party tomorrow.
a) will have b) is having c) is going to have d) had

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Why don't you ..... (wearing) this nice scarf? البحيرة ٢٠٢٢
2. She ..... (visit) her aunt at night the day after tomorrow.
3. Maher ..... (fly) to London. He's got his ticket. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
4. I ..... (sell) my old car. This is my intention. بورسعيد ٢٠٢٢

4 Write an email of NINETY (90) words to your friend Sayed to tell him about your problems with new technology. Your name is Amr and your email address is amr@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is sayed@student.com.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Challenging Questions

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب

1. We ..... (have) a dinner party. Everything is ready.
2. Do you think your brother ..... (help) you?
3. According to his intention, Hatim ..... (travel) to Marsa Matrouh for the summer holiday.

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

Vocabulary

array	مجموعة/مصفوفة
bungee jumping	القفز بالمطاط
chemicals	مواد كيميائية
conservation	الحفاظ على
decay (ed)	يتحلل/يتعفن
desert	صحراء
drone	طائرة بدون طيار
environment	البيئة
filter	فلتر (جهاز للتنقية)
flood (ed)	يفيض/فيضان
fortress	قلعة/حصن
horse riding	ركوب الخيل
hot-air ballooning	ركوب منطاد الهواء الساخن
install (ed)	يثبت
jungle	أدغال
mangrove	شجرة المنجروف
melt (ed)	ينصهر
planet	كوكب
pollute (d)	يلوث
postcard	بطاقة بريدية
recycle (d)	يعيد تدوير/تصنيع
reduce (d)	يقلل
rock climbing	تسلق الصخور
ruins	أطلال
sandboarding	التزلج على الرمال
snorkelling	السباحة بأنبوبة تنفس
solar panels	ألواح شمسية
star gazing	النظر للنجوم
wind turbines	توربينات الرياح

Language

1 be going to:

Subject + am/is/are (not) + going to + inf.

- I can see some dark clouds. It is going to **rain**.
- The students are going to **do** very well in their exams. **They always get good marks.**
- I am not going to **meet** my friends tomorrow.

Am/Is/Are + subject + going to + inf.?

- Is your sister going to **get** married tomorrow?

Wh.word + am/is/are + subject + going to + inf.?

- What are you going to **do** next weekend?

2 The present continuous:

Subject + am/is/are (not) + v.ing

- I'm visiting the dentist at half past four next Thursday.
- We're catching our train at 12:30. We aren't taking the bus.

Am/Is/Are + subject + v.ing?

- Are they visiting their aunt the day after tomorrow?

Wh.word + am/is/are + subject + v.ing?

- Where is Nader travelling next week?

Skills

1 Suggestion and invitation:

A: Would you like to come to my birthday party?

B: I'd love to do that.

A: Why don't you go to the cinema?

B: Yes, that/it might be fun.

A: You could read a book in bed.

B: It looks really exciting!

2 Making predictions and future plans:

A: What are you going to do at the weekend?

B: I'm going to visit my grandparents.

A: How are you going to improve your English?

B: I'm going to have holiday courses.

A: Are you going to recycle your mobile phone when it's old?

B: Sure. I'm going to reuse old parts from it to repair other phones.

Review On Unit 17

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

Question Bank

Al-Adwaa Test On Unit 11

24

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1. How is Kojo?

a) Sad. **b)** Well.

c) Sick. **d)** Tired.

2. Where is Jenna going?

a) The theatre. **b)** The cinema.

c) The library. **d)** The park.

3. Who is going with Jenna?

a) Her brother. **b)** Her sister.

c) Her aunt. **d)** Her husband.

4. Did Kojo accept the invitation?

a) Yes. **b)** No.

c) Maybe. **d)** I'm not sure.

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Randa asks Rasha about her plan for this evening. الغربية ٢٠٢٢

Randa : Good afternoon.

Rasha : (1)..... .

Randa : (2).....?

Rasha : I'm going to the airport this evening.

Randa : (3).....?

Rasha : To meet my brother. He's coming from England.

Randa : When does his plane arrive?

Rasha : (4)..... .

Randa : I hope he will arrive safely.

Rasha : (5)..... .

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions: أسيوط ٢٠٢٢

Plastic is everywhere! We use it for many different things. The problem is that plastic stays in the environment for a very long time. Some of the plastic people find on beaches is about 100 years old! We can ***recycle*** some plastic, but most of it goes into the ocean. Plastic is poisonous when animals eat it. Every year, hundreds of sea animals and birds die from plastic wastes. Dolphins and sea birds also swim into plastic fishing lines. We must try to use other materials such as paper and glass because **these** are easier to recycle. When we use a plastic shopping bag, we should try to use it more than once. We mustn't throw away these bags. It will take a long time to clean all the plastic rubbish from the beaches and oceans. But we mustn't stop trying to help our planet!

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Give a suitable title to this passage. .....
2. Why is plastic dangerous for animals and birds? .....
3. Do you think we should stop using plastic at all? Why? .....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined word "**these**" refers to ..... .
   a) dolphins **b)** paper and glass **c)** fishing lines **d)** examples
5. The word "***recycle***" means ..... .
   a) use again **b)** wash **c)** stay **d)** find out
6. It's better to use paper than using ..... .
   a) glass **b)** bags **c)** cashing **d)** plastic

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We should work together to ..... our environment safe.
   a) keep **b)** provide **c)** offer **d)** do
2. Scientists use the wind to ..... electricity.
   a) leave **b)** finish **c)** start **d)** make
3. My alarm clock didn't go ..... this morning, so I didn't wake up early.
   a) of **b)** off **c)** on **d)** out
4. She went to the mountains to try ..... .
   a) bungee jumping **b)** diving **c)** snorkelling **d)** rock climbing

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

5. There is ..... at the top of that mountain. Look, it's all white! البحيرة ٢٠٢٢
a) snow b) wind c) rain d) storm

6. People sometimes use a ..... to film animals from the sky. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
a) control b) drone c) lorry d) conversation

7. I went out in the evening to enjoy star ..... . دمياط ٢٠٢٢
a) riding b) diving c) jumping d) gazing

8. **A:** Why do you need to borrow my suitcase?
B: I ..... to visit my mother in Aswan next month.
a) going b) 's going c) 're going d) 'm going

9. This is my last day here. I ..... back to England tomorrow.
a) am going b) am going to c) going d) will go

10. On Friday at 8 o'clock, I ..... my friend.
a) am meeting b) meeting c) will meet d) going to meet

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The boy and his father are going to ..... (watching) a football match. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣
2. What about ..... (cook) lunch now? القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
3. I've decided that I ..... (look) for a new job.
4. We ..... (have) a party next Thursday at our home.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"How to keep your village or city clean" الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

Assess your progress ★ ★ ★ ★ ★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

Unit 12

Languages and learning

Objectives of the unit

Reading	A quiz about learning styles; an article about languages in Africa; an advert for a language school
Writing	An internet post giving advice; a study plan; an application form
Listening	A conversation about future plans; a radio interview about animal communication
Speaking	Talking about learning styles; a presentation about your studies; a discussion about study tips; giving advice, opinions and suggestions
Language	A review of tenses
Life Skills	Self-management; Communication skills; Critical thinking

Tapescript

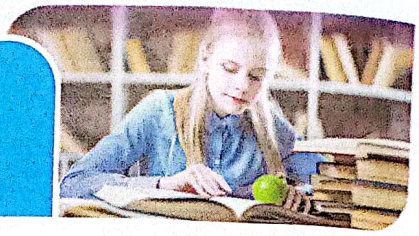
تشير لأسئلة كتاب التدريبات WB تشير لأسئلة كتاب الطالب SB

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

STUDY

Watch a video

Lessons 1 & 2



SB pages 54 - 57 | WB pages 107 & 108

A Vocabulary

- قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيدًا لدرجة الإتقان حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.
- قم باختبار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الذهاب لملحق التقويم وتسميع الكلمات الخاصة بالدرسين.

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

directions (n)	اتجاهات	learner (n)	المتعلِّم
disappointed (about) (adj)	محبط بشأن ...	learning (n)	التعلُّم
discuss (ed) (v)	يناقش	manager (n)	مدير
experiment (n)	تجربة	proud (of) (adj)	فخور (بـ)
free time (n)	وقت الفراغ	secondary (n/adj)	ثانوى
instructions (n)	تعليمات	summarise (d) (v)	يلخص
laboratory = lab (n)	معمل	university (n)	الجامعة

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

American (adj)	أمريكى	menu (n)	قائمة طعام
castle (n)	قلعة	podcast (n)	بث صوتى/إذاعى
continue (d) (v)	يستمر	prefer (red) (v)	يفضل
English grammar (n)	قواعد اللغة الإنجليزية	remember (ed) (v)	يتذكر
explain (ed) (v)	يشرح	studies (n)	دراسات
follow (ed) (v)	يتبع	TV show (n)	برنامج تلفزيونى
laugh (ed) (v)	يضحك	visitor (n)	زائر

Check Point

Choose and complete: menu - experiments - proud - instructions

1. Scientists do ..... in labs.
2. When you enter a restaurant, the waiter gives you the ..... .
3. I'm ..... of my father. He's a great man.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

achieve	a dream	يحقق حلمًا	learn	best	يتعلم أفضل
do	an experiment	يقوم بعمل تجربة	practise	a language	يمارس لغة
	research	يقوم ببحث	take	an exam	يأخذ امتحانًا
give	a presentation	يقدم عرضًا تقديميًا	write	a blog	يكتب مدونة

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:

(n) = noun	(adj) = adjective	(prep) = preposition
(v) = verb	(adv) = adverb	(conj) = conjunction

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

Prepositions — حروف الجر

agree with	يتفق مع	look in a dictionary	يبحث فى القاموس
ask for	يطلب	make up	يؤلف
cut down	يقطع	work out	يستنتج/يستنبط
find out	يكتشف	write down	يدون

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs — تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	P.P.	Present	Past simple	P.P.
fly يطير	flew	flown	understand يفهم	understood	understood
spell يتهجى	spelt	spelt	write يكتب	wrote	written

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية

1 busy + (v + ing) — مشغول بـ

- You are always **busy** making and repairing things.

2 by (v + ing) — بواسطة/عن طريق

- You learn best **by** reading and writing.

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ

Words and Synonyms — الكلمات ومرادفها

Word — الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning) — مرادفها
continue يستمر	go on يستمر
find out يكتشف	discover يكتشف

Suffix اللاحقة

Word — الكلمة	Suffix — اللاحقة	Function — الوظيفة	The new word — الكلمة الجديدة
instruct (v) يأمر	-ion	تحويل الفعل لاسم	instruction (n) تعليمات
manage (v) يدير	-er	تحويل الفعل لاسم فاعل	manager (n) مدير

هذا الجزء يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المتشابهة فى الهجاء ولكن مختلفة فى المعنى.

Similar Spelling - Different Meaning

Word — الكلمة	Similar word — الكلمة المشابهة
advice (n) نصيحة	advise (v) ينصح
practice (n) ممارسة/تدريب	practise (v) يمارس/يتدرب

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 1

SB page 54

What type of learner are you? Take the quiz to find out!

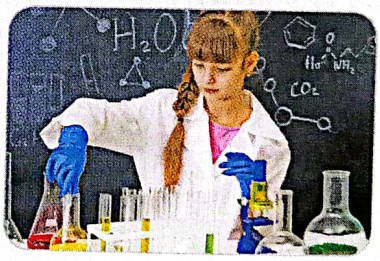
1. **Which of these things do you prefer to do in your free time?**

a) Read a book.
b) Watch a film or TV show.
c) Play a video game.
d) Listen to music.

2. **If you want to learn how to play a new sport, what do you do?**

a) Read online about how to play it.
b) Watch a video of people playing it.
c) Start playing and learn as you play.
d) Ask for advice from someone who can play it.

3. **You need to tell your class about a new English book. What would you prefer to do?**



a) Write a review of it.
b) Make a short video about it.
c) Act some of the book with friends.
d) Read some of the book to your class.

4. **Someone asks you for directions (1). What do you do?**

a) Write down instructions (2).
b) Draw a map.
c) Use your hands and body to explain (3).
d) Tell them where to go.

(1) اتجاهات
(2) تعليمات
(3) يشرح

5. **If you don't know how to spell a word, what do you do?**

a) Look in a dictionary.
b) Try to work out how to spell it.
c) Write it down to see if it looks right.
d) Say the word slowly to hear the sounds.

Note:

dictionary /dɪkʃənri/

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

instruction /ɪnstrʌkʃn/

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

Pre-reading question: - Do you prefer the same way of learning all the time?

Count how many of each letter you chose in the quiz. Then read about your result.

SB page 55

I chose mostly a:

You learn best by reading and writing.

You like reading books or writing stories. You love words and learn best by reading about something and taking notes.

(1) رسم توضيحى

(2) يصلح

I chose mostly b:

You learn best by seeing things.

You love to watch videos and look at diagrams[1]. You love films and art. You learn things better if you can see them.

I chose mostly c:

You learn best by doing things.

You are always busy making and repairing[2] things. You learn things best by trying to do them and sometimes find it hard to understand by listening or reading.

I chose mostly d:

You learn by listening.

You love music and are often talking! You find it easier to learn by listening to people explain things to you and by discussing things with them.

Post-reading question:

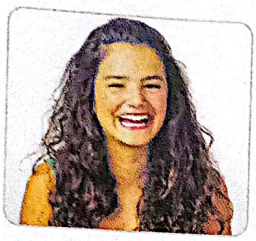
- Which type of learning do you prefer?

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

Pre-reading question: - What are the four types of learners?

What sort of learners are the following? Choose the correct words.

WB page 107



1. Habiba likes summarising (1) a text. For example, if a text is 100 words long, she writes a summary (2) in about 15–20 words.
Habiba learns best by writing.

2. Fares remembers things easily. I showed him a map of how to walk to my house yesterday. He says he can see the map in his head today!
Fares learns by seeing things.

3. For Dareen, the best way to remember English grammar (3) is to make up a song about it! Then she sings the song quietly to herself. She says it is a great way to remember irregular verbs!
Dareen learns best by listening.

4. Marwan finds it difficult to understand science books, but when he does an experiment (4) in the laboratory (5), he always understands what is happening!
Marwan learns best by doing things.

(1) يلخص
(2) ملخص
(3) قواعد اللغة الإنجليزية
(4) تجربة علمية
(5) معمل

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

experiment /ɪksperəmənt/ laboratory /lə'bɒrətri/

Post-reading questions:

1. What type of learner is Dareen?
2. In which type of learning do people do experiments?

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

Pre-listening question:

- What do you want to be when you grow up?

Listen to Fares and Nevine talking about their future plans. What jobs do they hope to do?

SB page 56

Fares My name's Fares. When I was young, I didn't use to like studying. But, one day, I failed(1) an exam. My father was disappointed(2). He said that one day he wanted me to be the manager(3) of our family shop. He explained(4) about all the skills(5) that I needed to work there: maths, reading, writing and English. Now I'm working hard to pass(6) my exams so I can make my family proud(7). Next year, I'm starting secondary(8) school and I'll continue(9) to study hard!

Nevine When I was nine, I was playing with my sister when I fell and hurt my arm. The doctor at the hospital was so clever and kind, so I decided I wanted to be a doctor too! I know it will be hard to achieve(10) my dream. I need to go to university(11) and pass lots of exams.

My uncle lives in the USA, so I'm going to study there when I'm older, and then I want to come back to Egypt and work in a hospital.

(1) يرسب
(2) محبط
(3) مدير
(4) يشرح
(5) مهارات
(6) يجتاز/ينجح
(7) فخور
(8) ثانوى
(9) يستمر
(10) يحقق
(11) الجامعة

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

secondary /ˈsekəndəri/

university /juːnɪvɜːrsɪti/

Post-listening question:

- What skills do you need to get a good job?

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Salma was ..... that she failed her exam. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣
   a) happy b) pleased c) disappointed d) smiling
2. The pupils are doing a/an ..... in the laboratory. سوهاج ٢٠٢٢
   a) experiment b) play c) experience d) exercise
3. You should write ..... instructions on a piece of paper. الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٢
   a) down b) of c) up d) in
4. The manager was angry when he found ..... the truth. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) off b) out c) on d) in
5. My cousin is good at ..... . He likes English, French and German.
   a) languages b) experiments c) arts d) sports
6. When you learn by ....., you look at diagrams.
   a) writing b) seeing c) listening d) reading
7. She stayed extra time at university to ..... research.
   a) play b) try c) do d) make
8. For me, the best way to remember English grammar is to ..... a song about it.
   a) put off b) clean up c) make up d) take off
9. I was very worried when I ..... a presentation in front of the class.
   a) gave b) solved c) changed d) worked
10. Everyone should work hard to ..... their dreams.
    a) carry b) look c) achieve d) see
11. They all like him for his fantastic ..... .
    a) skulls b) skills c) skins d) letters
12. Can you ..... the story you read?
    a) summarise b) prefer c) laugh d) make
13. When you finish your lunch, you can ..... playing with your toys.
    a) dive b) drive c) continue d) laugh
14. I felt so ..... when my son graduated from university. المنوفية ٢٠٢٢
    a) proud b) angry c) sad d) disappointed
15. If you get lost, you should ..... someone for directions. الغربية ٢٠٢٢
    a) make b) find c) agree d) ask
16. To get better, you should follow the doctor's ..... .
    a) solutions b) instructions c) universities d) reviews

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

C Language

Tenses (present, past and future)

الأزمنة (مضارع - ماضٍ - مستقبل)

1 Present tenses

أزمنة المضارع

A Present simple

المضارع البسيط

Form & Usage التكوين والاستخدام

يستخدم للتعبير عن العادات المستمرة فى الحاضر وعن الحقائق الثابتة.

I, You, We, They, اسم جمع + inf. / don't + inf.

He, She, It, اسم مفرد + inf. + s, es, ies / doesn't + inf.

- I study English on Fridays.
- We don't go to school on Fridays.
- My uncle lives in the USA.
- She doesn't like meat.

B Present continuous

المضارع المستمر

Form & Usage التكوين والاستخدام

يستخدم للتعبير عن شىء يحدث الآن أثناء الكلام ويستمر لفترة.

I > am/am not

He, She, It, اسم مفرد > is/isn't > inf. + ing

You, We, They, اسم جمع > are/aren't

- I'm emailing him today.
- Hamsa is doing her homework now.
- They aren't playing at the moment.

تمكنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Got it ?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 We ..... (go) to the gym now.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (are going) لوجود كلمة now الدالة على زمن المضارع المستمر.

2 Laila ..... (is having) her lunch at 4 every day.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (has) لوجود (every day) الدالة على المضارع البسيط وفاعل الجملة مفرد.

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

2 Past tenses أزمنة الماضى

A Past simple الماضى البسيط

Form & Usage التكوين والاستخدام

Subject الفاعل + التصريف الثانى للفعل / didn't + inf.

يستخدم للتعبير عن شىء حدث فى الماضى وانتهى وليس له أثر فى الحاضر و مع سرد أحداث ماضية.

- She visited her aunt last weekend.
- She didn't go to the club.

يستخدم مع العادات التى كانت تحدث فى الماضى فقط.

- I usually played football when I was young.
- I didn't study French when I was young.

B Used to اعتاد أن (فى الماضى)

Form التكوين

Subject الفاعل + used to / didn't use to + inf.

- I used to like basketball. I didn't use to like tennis!

C Past continuous الماضى المستمر

Form & Usage التكوين والاستخدام

شىء حدث فى الماضى واستمر لفترة فى الماضى/شىء حدث فى وقت محدد فى الماضى.

I, He, She, It, اسم مفرد > was/wasn't
You, We, They, اسم جمع > were/weren't
> inf. + ing

- The boys were playing all day yesterday.
- I was studying yesterday evening.

When & While

حدثان فى الماضى أحدهما كان مستمرًا (ماضٍ مستمر) عندما جاء حدث آخر وقطعة (أثَّر فيه) (ماضٍ بسيط).

When + (past simple) , (past continuous)
While + (past continuous) , (past simple)

- When it started to rain, I was playing tennis with my sister.
- While I was playing tennis with my sister, it started to rain.

Got it ?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 I ..... (not/go) out last night.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (didn't go) لوجود (last) الدالة على الماضى البسيط و الجملة منفية.

2 While we ..... (do) our homework, our uncle came.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (were doing) لوجود (while) التى يتبعها ماضى مستمر.

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

3 Future tenses

A Will

Form & Usage التكوين والاستخدام

Subject الفاعل + will ('ll)/won't + inf.

عمل تنبؤات فى المستقبل (بدون دليل).

- I think it will be hot tomorrow.

Subject الفاعل + will (won't) be able to + inf.

للتعبير عن القدرة فى المستقبل (سوف يكون قادرًا على).

- If my mother has more free time, we'll be able to go out.

If/When + subject + present simple مضارع بسيط , subject + will/won't + inf.

- If everyone shops online, the shops in our towns and cities will close.

B (Be) going to

Form & Usage التكوين والاستخدام

I	am/am not	going to + inf.
He, She, It, اسم مفرد	is/isn't	
You, We, They, اسم جمع	are/aren't	

للتعبير عن نية أو قصدٍ لفعل شىء فى المستقبل تم التخطيط له.

- I am going to spend the weekend in my village as planned.

لعمل تنبؤات فى المستقبل بناءً على ما يمكننا رؤيته أو معرفته (تنبؤ بدليل).

- I can see some dark clouds. It is going to rain.

C Present continuous

المضارع المستمر

Form & Usage التكوين والاستخدام

I	am/am not	inf. + ing
He, She, It, اسم مفرد	is/isn't	
You, We, They, اسم جمع	are/aren't	

للخطط والترتيبات المستقبلية، غالبًا مع الوقت والتاريخ (الشىء المرتب له مسبقًا).

- I'm visiting the dentist at half past four next Thursday.

Got it ?

Complete the sentence with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- Sally ..... (meet) her friends in the club at seven o'clock tomorrow.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (is meeting) لأن الجملة تعبر عن شىء تم الترتيب له فى المستقبل مع ذكر الوقت فنستخدم المضارع المستمر.

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

PRACTICE

Language Exercises

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Baher ..... computer games when his father came into the room.
   a) will play b) was playing c) is playing d) plays
2. The boy and his father ..... watch a football match. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
   a) going to b) are going to c) is going to d) be going
3. He didn't ..... do sports when he was young. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) uses to b) used to c) using to d) use to
4. When I opened my eyes, I ..... a strange sight.
   a) saw b) was seeing c) see d) am seeing
5. Every morning, Sally ..... up early and gets ready for work.
   a) is waking b) wakes c) woke d) was waking
6. My son ..... 8 years next month. المنيا ٢٠٢٣
   a) will b) is going to be c) will be d) is being
7. What ..... doing at the moment?
   a) he is b) he was c) is he d) was he
8. I can see some dark clouds. It ..... . الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
   a) going to rain b) rain c) raining d) is going to rain
9. I always ..... a helmet when I go cycling.
   a) wear b) am wearing c) wore d) was wearing
10. Where did you ..... when you were young? الأقصر ٢٠٢٣
    a) used to play b) use to be played c) used to playing d) use to play

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Maggi ..... (play) nice music now. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
2. Mona used to ..... (drinks) milk, but now she doesn't. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
3. He usually ..... (ride) his bike in the park.
4. Yesterday at ten, she ..... (read) a book.
5. Belal ..... (go) to the library last night. الغربية ٢٠٢٣
6. I think the exam ..... (would) be easy. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

D Skills

1. Speaking

Talking about learning styles التحدث عن أساليب التعلم

online

1. How do you prefer to learn? كيف تفضل أن تتعلم؟

- I like to learn in different ways. I don't like doing the same thing. أحب أن أتعلم بطرق مختلفة. لا أحب عمل نفس الشىء.

2. What type of learning would you like to do more?
ما نوع التعلم الذى تود أن تؤديه بشكل أكبر؟

- I learn best by doing things.
أفضل طريقة للتعلم بالنسبة لى عن طريق فعل الأشياء. (التعلم العملى).

3. What type of learning would you like to do less?
ما نوع التعلم الذى تود أن تؤديه بشكل أقل؟

- I learn less by listening. أتعلم بشكل أقل عن طريق الاستماع.

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialogue:

Safaa doesn't understand the last science lesson.

Safaa : Can you help me?
Wafaa : (1)..... . What do you want?
Safaa : (2)..... .
Wafaa : What type of learning would you like to do more?
Safaa : (3)..... .
Wafaa : Great! I have a diagram. We can look at it.
Safaa : Now I understand it. (4).....?
Wafaa : I like classes when we see things.
Safaa : (5).....?
Wafaa : I learn less by writing.

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

2. Write it right

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.

How to write about kinds of learners

كيفية الكتابة عن أنواع المتعلمين

- There are four kinds of learners.
- Firstly, who learn best by reading and writing.
- They like reading books or writing stories.
- Secondly, who learn best by doing things.
- They are always busy making and repairing things.
- Thirdly, who learn best by seeing things.
- They love to watch videos and look at diagrams.
- Finally, who learn by listening.
- They love music and are often talking!

Writing tips

For each supporting idea, think of RENNS that further explain the idea.

فكر فى أسباب وأمثلة وأسماء وأرقام ومشاعر لكل فكرة داعمة لكى تساهم فى شرح الفكرة بشكل أفضل.

Example

Kinds of learners

There are four kinds of learners. Firstly, some students learn best by reading and writing. They like reading books or writing stories. They love words and learn best by reading about something and taking notes. Secondly, other students learn best by doing things. They are always busy making and repairing things. They learn things best by trying to do them and sometimes find it hard to understand by listening or reading. Thirdly, others learn best by seeing things. They love to watch videos and look at diagrams. They love films and art. They learn things better if they can see them. Finally, not many students learn by listening. They love music and are often talking! They find it easier to learn by listening to people explain things to others and by discussing things with them.

Check Point

Write a paragraph about:

"What type of learner you are"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

TEST YOURSELF

Take a test

Unit 12 Lessons (1 & 2)

19.5

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

1. What type of learning does Dareen prefer?
   a) Repairing things. b) Writing stories.
   c) Listening. d) Making up songs.
2. For what is it useful?
   a) English spelling. b) English grammar.
   c) English vocabulary. d) English writing.
3. Who does she do it with?
   a) Herself. b) The class. c) Her family. d) Her brother.
4. What can it help her to remember?
   a) Writing. b) Spelling. c) Irregular verbs. d) Sentences.

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Tamer and Hani are talking about the exam results.

Tamer : Did you see the results of the exams?
Hani : (1)..... . What about you?
Tamer : I passed all my exams, too.
Hani : Great news! (2).....?
Tamer : Of course, they are proud of me.
Hani : (3).....?
Tamer : I didn't decide yet. What about you?
Hani : (4)..... .
Tamer : Great! I think you will be a good doctor.
Hani : (5)..... .

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. If you don't know a word, look it up in a ..... .
   a) dictionary b) presentation c) photograph d) project
2. We greeted our ..... with a big smile and offered them some snacks.
   a) actions b) results c) waiters d) visitors
3. Can you ..... the problem clearly and I may help you? القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) steal b) refuse c) paint d) explain
4. The waiter brought the ..... to choose my meal. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
   a) menu b) diary c) text d) review
5. Do you want to ..... your studies?
   a) discuss b) repair c) continue d) act

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

6. We go to the ..... in science lessons. الغربية ٢٠٢٢
a) library b) factory c) workshop d) laboratory

7. Which drink would you ....., coffee or tea?
a) act b) prefer c) eat d) change

8. I ..... a football match two days ago. الغربية ٢٠٢٢
a) watching b) watched c) watch d) watches

9. They usually ..... basketball on Fridays.
a) play b) are playing c) were playing d) played

10. Look at that man! He ..... in that hole.
a) will fall b) 's going to fall c) are falling d) falls

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I think people will all ..... (used) electric cars. الغربية ٢٠٢٢
2. At the moment, I ..... (revise) English grammar.
3. When we travelled to Paris, we ..... (visit) the Eiffel Tower. دمياط ٢٠٢٢
4. Are you ..... (going/buy) another car? أسيوط ٢٠٢٣

5 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"The way of learning you prefer"

.....

.....

.....

.....

Challenging Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب

1 Let's ..... a new language by saying main words like "hello" and "thank you."
a) tell b) say c) talk d) practise

2 I agreed ..... play outside with my friends.
a) for b) about c) to d) with

3 Can you ..... your name for me? I want to write it.
a) spell b) talk c) tell d) remember

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

STUDY

Watch a video

Lessons 3 & 4

SB pages 58 - 60 | WB pages 109 & 110

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

body language (n)	لغة الجسد	home language (n)	اللغة الأم
communicate (d) (with) (v)	يتواصل (مع)	identity (n)	هوية
communication (n)	تواصل	international (adj)	دولى/عالمى
community (n)	مجتمع	multilingual (adj)	متعدد اللغات
connect (ed) (to/with) (v)	يتصل بـ	national (adj)	قومى/وطنى
dialect (n)	لهجة/لغة بلد ما	sounds (n)	أصوات
expert (n)	خبير	stroke (n)	مداعبة
eye contact (n)	الاتصال بالعين	touch (ed) (n/v)	اللمس/يلمس
facial expressions (n)	تعبيرات الوجه	voice (n)	صوت بشرى
field (n)	ملعب/حقل		

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

area (n)	منطقة	normally (adv)	عادة/في العادة
difference (n)	اختلاف	own (adj)	ملك/خاصة بـ
join (ed) (v)	ينضم/يضم	quality (n)	صفة/ميزة
nearly (adv)	تقريبًا	result (n)	نتيجة

Check Point

Choose and complete: dialect – communicate – join – identity

1. Dolphins ..... with each other by using sounds.
2. A language of a certain area is called a ..... .
3. I want to ..... the next school trip.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

copy › sounds	يقلد الأصوات	make › noise	تحدث ضوضاء/ضجة
give › identities	يعطى الهويات	spend › time with	يقضى وقتًا مع

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

Prepositions

حروف الجر

careful about	حريص على	go away	يذهب بعيدًا/يبتعد
different to	مختلف عن	look after	يعتنى بـ
disappointed with	محبط من	walk into	يدخل فى/يصطدم بـ

Words and Opposites

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
advantages	مميزات	disadvantages	عيوب
possible	ممكن	impossible	مستحيل

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ

Definitions

التعريفات

advantages	مميزات	the good things about something
dialect	لهجة/لغة بلد ما	a way of speaking used in one area
experts	خبراء	people who know lots about a subject
identities	هويات	the qualities that make you different to other people
multilingual	متعدد اللغات	be able to speak many languages
national	وطنى/قومى	of or for the whole country

Words and Synonyms

الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
advantages	مميزات	benefits	فوائد

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
differ (v)	يختلف	-ence		تحويل الفعل لاسم		difference (n)	اختلاف
nation (n)	أمة	-al		تحويل الاسم لصفة		national (adj)	وطنى/قومى

Prefix البادئة

Prefix	البادئة	Function	الوظيفة	Word	الكلمة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
multi-		تعطى معنى التعدد		lingual (adj)	لغوى	multilingual (adj)	متعدد اللغات

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 3

Pre-listening question:

- Do you think animals can understand us?

Listen to a podcast about animals. What types of communication from Exercise 1 does Dr Ahmed talk about?

SB page 58

Munir What do you know about animals? Do you think they understand (1) you? Today, I'm talking to Dr Ahmed who is going to tell us about how animals communicate (2). Hello, Dr Ahmed.

Dr Ahmed Hello.

Munir Let's talk about the animals that you often see on a farm. My brother is a farmer and I think that his cat understands him sometimes. Is that possible (3)?

Dr Ahmed I'm sure the cat understands when he is angry and understands words like 'dinner', for example.

Munir But of course, the cat can't talk to him.

Dr Ahmed No, animals can't speak in the way people can, but some animals like birds can copy sounds (4). But animals do communicate, both to us and to each other. One way animals communicate is by using body language (5). For example, horses touch noses to say hello to another horse they like, and bees dance when they find a good flower.

Munir So can I learn to communicate better with animals then?

Dr Ahmed From my point of view, it's important to watch and listen to what animals are trying to tell you. You should be careful about how you use your body and voice. So, if an animal is scared, you should move slowly and use a soft voice (6). How about listening to the way your cat makes a noise? Does it sound different if it is frightened, wants some food? I think it will!

(1) يفهم
(2) يتواصل
(3) ممكن
(4) يقلد الأصوات
(5) لغة الجسد
(6) صوت هادئ

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمة التالية:

communicate /kəˈmju:nɪkeɪt/

Post-listening question: - How do animals communicate?

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

Lesson 3

Pre-reading question:

- What are your problems with your brothers and sisters?

Read this post from the internet. What's the girl's problem? SB page 59

Can anyone give me some advice (1)?

I have an older sister (she's three years older than me). We used to be best friends, but now she doesn't want to talk to me very much. She is always on the internet or talking to people on her phone.

She tells me to go away (2) if I try to talk to her. I miss (3) being friends with her. How can I get her to spend time with me again?

Please give me some advice!

Yours, Radwa

(1) نصائح
(2) يبتعد
(3) يفتقد

Post-reading question: - What advice would you give her?

Lesson 4

Complete the text with the correct form of the words from Exercise 1 (there is one word you do not need). WB page 110

The languages of Switzerland

Switzerland is a small European country. Here, you do not need to be an **expert** to speak many languages. That is because nearly all people in Switzerland are **multilingual**: they speak the country's four **national** languages. That is because each area of Switzerland has always had its own **identity** and its own language.

The parts of Switzerland near Italy speak Italian, the parts near Germany speak German and the parts near France speak French. In the southwest of Switzerland, they also speak a **dialect** called Romansh.

Each language **connects** the people with their area, but they are also very proud of their country.

Life Skills

1. When might you need to use each of the forms of communication in Exercise 1?
2. Why do you think good communication is so important?

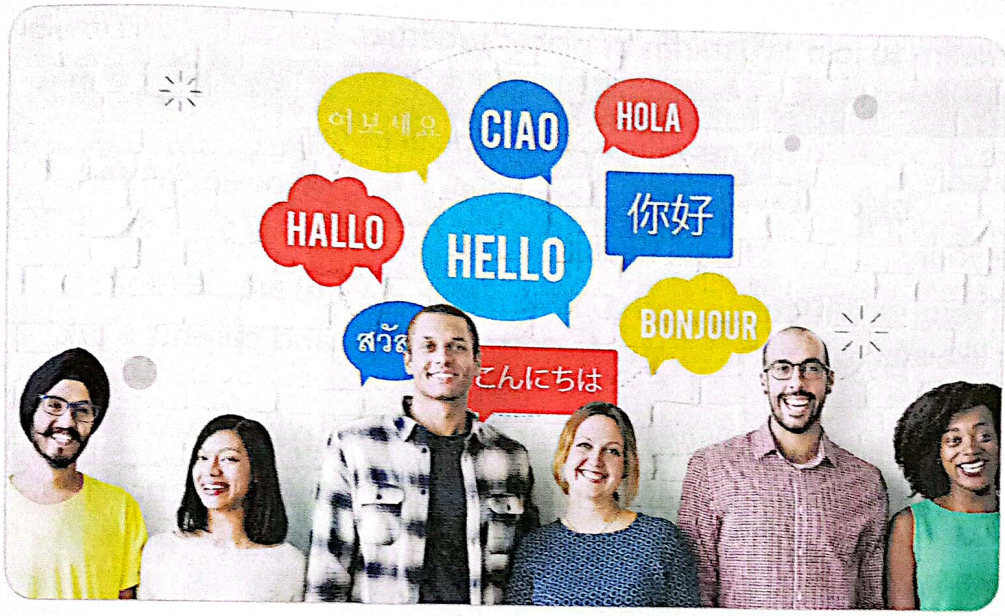
Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

Lesson 4

Pre-reading question: - How many languages do you speak? What are they?

Read the text quickly and answer the questions. *SB page 60*

Multilingual[1] Africa



(1) متعدد اللغات
(2) الخبراء
(3) يعتقد/يصدق
(4) لهجة/لغة لبلد ما
(5) وطنى/قومى
(6) مميزات
(7) هويات
(8) يوصل
(9) مجتمع
(10) دولى

Experts[2] believe[3] that there are more than 2,100 languages spoken in Africa. Many African people speak three languages: their dialect[4] (or home language), the national[5] language and another European language such as English, French or Portuguese that they learn at school. This means they are multilingual! Of course, many people speak more than three languages!

People who speak different languages have lots of advantages[6]. If you speak more than one language, you can talk to different people in different places and in different ways. When you are multilingual, you are able to understand both your home and the world better.

It also gives people different identities[7]. If you speak your home language, it connects[8] you to your community[9]. Your national language connects you to your country and all the other people in it. An international[10] language, like English, connects you to an international community.

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

dialect /ˈdaɪəlekt/ identity /aɪdentɪti/ community /kəmju:nɪti/

Post-reading question: - What is the importance of being multilingual?

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Modern technology helps people to ..... with each other. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) communicate b) see c) read d) fight
2. To ..... means to join two things or places together. المنوفية ٢٠٢٢
   a) fix b) connect c) copy d) explain
3. Basmala looks ..... in her new dress. Everyone likes her.
   a) ugly b) lovely c) negative d) disappointed
4. Can you raise your .....? I can't hear you.
   a) sound b) voice c) ton d) article
5. Our school is like a/an ..... where students, teachers and parents work together.
   a) community b) communication c) identity d) dialect
6. A/An ..... is someone who knows a lot about a specific subject or skill.
   a) baby b) expert c) export d) part
7. I have my ..... room where I can keep my toys and books.
   a) own b) soft c) funny d) national
8. I ..... fell asleep while the film was on!
   a) near b) nearly c) nearby d) nearer
9. There is a great ..... between you and your brother.
   a) difference b) different c) difficult d) difficulty
10. Could you ..... me some advice on what to wear?
    a) have b) make c) do d) give
11. We knew you were angry from your ..... .
    a) reading b) touch c) smile d) facial expressions
12. The players left the ..... when the match ended.
    a) barn b) park c) farm d) field
13. The ..... of people in Cairo is different from those in Upper Egypt. المنوفية ٢٠٢٢
    a) connection b) multilingual c) language d) dialect
14. One of the mobile's ..... is to use it everywhere. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
    a) dialects b) experts c) voices d) advantages
15. A person who speaks lots of languages is ..... . بور سعيد ٢٠٢٣
    a) national b) multilingual c) old d) different

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

C Skills

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.

1. Speaking

1. A presentation about studies

عرض تقديمى عن الدراسة

online

What didn't you use to like to study but like to study now?

ما الشىء الذى لم تكن تحب دراسته ولكنك تحبه الآن؟

I didn't use to like to study history. But I like to study it now.

لم أعتد أن أحب دراسة التاريخ. ولكنى أحب أن أدرسه الآن.

What job did you want to do when you were younger, and do you still want to do it?

ما الوظيفة التى أردتها عندما كنت صغيرًا؟ وهل ما زلت تريدها الآن؟

I wanted to be a teacher. Yes, I still want to do it now.

أردت أن أكون مدرسًا. نعم ما زلت أريدها الآن.

What subjects do you like studying now? Why?

ما المواد التى تحب دراستها الآن؟ ولماذا؟

I like studying English and German because I like languages.

أحب أن أدرس اللغة الإنجليزية والألمانية لأننى أحب اللغات.

What do you want to study in the future? Why?

ماذا تريد أن تدرس فى المستقبل؟ ولماذا؟

I want to study the space because I want to learn about our planet.

أريد أن أدرس الفضاء لأننى أريد أن أتعلم عن كوكبنا.

Why do you want to study to be a scientist?

لماذا تدرس لتصبح عالمًا؟

Because I like science.

لأننى أحب العلوم.

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

2. Advice, Opinions and Suggestions

النصيحة والآراء والمقترحات

A) Advice: النصيحة

- **You should + inf.**
  - You should be careful about how you use your body and voice.

B) Opinion: الرأى

- **I think .....**
- **From my point of view, ...**
  - I think that his cat understands him.
  - From my point of view, it's important to watch and listen to what animals are trying to tell you.

C) Suggestions: الاقتراح

- **Let's + inf.**
- **How about + v + ing...?**
  - Let's talk about the animals that you often see on a farm.
  - How about listening to how your cat makes a noise?

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialogue:

Nour and Hanaa are talking about studies.

Nour : Hello, Hanaa. What job did you want to do when you were younger?

Hanaa : (1)..... .

Nour : (2).....?

Hanaa : Because I liked reading the news.

Nour : Do you still want to do it?

Hanaa : (3)..... . I still like to be a presenter.

Nour : (4).....?

Hanaa : I like studying English and Arabic.

Nour : What subjects don't you like to study?

Hanaa : (5)..... .

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

2. Write it right

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.

1. How to write about the importance of learning many languages

كيفية الكتابة عن أهمية تعلم عدة لغات

Example

Learning languages

Learning other languages is a way of communicating with other nations because we can never understand other countries without knowing their languages. There are many reasons why learning a new language is a good idea. It helps you to communicate with new people. It helps you to see things from a different view, or understand other cultures. It helps you to become a better listener. It helps you to understand both your home and the world better. It also gives people different identities. It connects you to an international community.

Writing tips

Brainstorm supporting ideas. Choose 2 - 6 supporting ideas that do a good job supporting your topic sentence.

قم بالبحث عن أفكار مساعدة لموضوع الفقرة. اختر من ٢-٦ أفكار لتساعدك على دعم جملتك الرئيسية.

2. How to write about learning vocabulary

كيفية الكتابة عن تعلم مفردات اللغة

To : malek@gmail.com
From : adam@gmail.com
Subject : Learning vocabulary

Dear Malek,

I'd like to tell you about learning new vocabulary. English is the most popular spoken language all over the world. Many people speak English around the world. To improve your English, you should practise it. The most important part in learning English is the vocabulary. There are some steps that help you to learn English vocabulary. Make flashcards of words that you need to remember, organised by topic. Read the words in context: that means putting the word in a written sentence, so you can see how it works with other words. Don't try to remember too many words at the same time. Watch English-language TV programmes or films and listen for known words. Read as many stories and news articles as you can.

Write soon.

Yours, Adam

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

1 Read the following, then answer the questions:

المنوفية ٢٠٢٣

Learning a foreign language is not **easy**. Some people don't like learning a foreign language for this reason. Lots of people all over the world are learning English for different reasons. It is the most widely spoken language in the world. A tour guide needs to use English when **he** speaks to tourists from different countries in the world. Businessmen need to use English because they travel to many countries. People who work with computers need to know English because they do a lot of work on the internet which is like a bank of information. Students need to learn English to be able to read books written in English.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea for the passage?

.....

2. What does the underlined pronoun "**he**" refer to?

.....

3. Do you think learning English is important for students? Why/Why not?

.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. ..... people all over the world are learning English.
   a) Many b) Not many c) Few d) Some
5. A tour guide needs English to speak to ..... .
   a) tourists b) farmers c) students d) doctors
6. The opposite of the underlined word "**easy**" is "..... ".
   a) different b) difficult c) fast d) amazing

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. One of the ..... of reading books is that you learn new things.
   a) advantages b) languages c) identities d) sounds
2. My little brother loves to ..... the sounds of animals.
   a) make b) spend c) give d) copy
3. She left her work to ..... after her children.
   a) give b) look c) take d) have
4. He's a/an ..... at computers. He's very excellent at using them.
   a) student b) dialect c) expert d) stranger
5. Body ..... means the way you move your body.

القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

   a) language b) built c) lantern d) balance

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

6. Arabic is the ..... language to the whole Arab world.
a) house b) home c) flat d) apartment

7. Can you tell me the ..... between the two countries?
a) difference b) different c) differ d) differently

8. I ..... to her five minutes ago.
a) was talking b) talked c) talk d) am talking

9. **A:** Can I speak to Mr Said, please?
B: Sorry, he is out. I think he ..... back after three.
a) is b) was c) be d) will be

10. Mariam is good at languages. She ..... French, Spanish and German. WB
a) will speak b) spoke c) is speaking d) speaks

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Last year, we ..... (have) visitors from China and Japan. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣
2. **A:** Where's Nader?
B: He ..... (play) football with his friends.
3. Maher ..... (usually/spend) his holiday by the sea.
4. In the future, it ..... (be) possible to travel into space. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

4 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"Importance of being multilingual"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Challenging Questions

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب

1. My father doesn't like to talk while he ..... (watch) a match.
2. He always ..... (ride) his bike when he was younger.
3. She didn't use to have long hair, but now she ..... (have).

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

STUDY

Watch a video

Lessons 5 & 6

SB pages 61 - 63 | WB pages 111 - 113

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

alone (adv)	بمفرده	organise (d) (v)	ينظم
article (n)	مقال	personal statement (n)	بيان شخصى
date of birth (n)	تاريخ الميلاد	realise (d) (v)	يدرك
furniture (n)	أثاث	revise (d) (v)	يراجع
language school (n)	مدرسة لغات	study plan (n)	خطة دراسية
manage (d) (v)	يدير/يتمكن	topic (n)	موضوع
nationality (n)	جنسية	vocabulary (n)	مفردات اللغة

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

application form (n)	استمارة طلب	smoke (n)	دخان
comment (n/v)	تعليق/يعلق	spelling (n)	الهجاء
correctly (adv)	بشكل صحيح	summer course (n)	دورة صيفية

Check Point

Choose and complete: smoke – spelling – comments – managed

1. My homework was very difficult, but I ..... to do it.
2. Much ..... is coming out of the factory. There is a fire.
3. I have lots of ..... on my last post.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

complete	a form	يكمل استمارة	make	flashcards	يعمل بطاقات تعليمية
do	activities	يؤدى أنشطة		timetable	يعمل جدولًا
	sports	يؤدى رياضة	take	a break	يأخذ استراحة
get	better	يتحسن	walk	past	يمشى مارًا بـ
sound	fun	يبدو مرحًا			

Prepositions — حروف الجر

advert for	إعلان لـ	in context	فى السياق
at the same time	فى نفس الوقت	organised by topic	مرتبة حسب الموضوع
at the weekend	فى عطلة نهاية الأسبوع	test (ed) on	يختبر على
hear from	يتلقى رسالة/أخبار من	useful for	مفيد لـ

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	P.P.
break يكسر	broke	broken
learn يتعلم	learnt (learned)	learnt (learned)

Words and Opposites

الكلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym) عكسها
calm هادئ	noisy صاخب
known معروف	unknown غير معروف
personal شخصى	public عام

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ

Definitions

التعريفات

disappointed محبط	how you feel if you fail an exam
improve يحسن	to get better at something
organised منظم	able to plan things carefully
pass ينجح	what you want to do when you take an exam
personal statement بيان شخصى	where you tell someone about yourself
voice صوت	a sound that comes from your mouth

Words and Synonyms

الكلمات ومرادفها

Word الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning) مرادفها
broken مكسور	damaged تالف
known معروف	famous/popular مشهور

Suffix اللاحقة

Word الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
pronounce (v) ينطق	-ation	تحويل الفعل لاسم	pronunciation (n) نطق
person (n) شخص	-al	تحويل الاسم لصفة	personal (adj) شخصى

Similar Spelling - Different Meaning

Word الكلمة	Similar word الكلمة المشابهة
break استراحة	brake فرامل

هذا الجزء يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المتشابهة فى الهجاء ولكن مختلفة فى المعنى.

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

B Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-reading question: - How do you study English grammar?

Lesson 5

Complete the study plan with these words.

WB page 111

Study plan: how to learn English vocabulary (1)

1. Make flashcards (2) of words that you need to remember organised (3) by topic (for example, words for furniture).
2. Write the words in context (4): that means putting the word in a written sentence, so you can see how it works with other words.
3. Don't try to remember too many words at the same time: find how many words is best for you.
4. Watch English-language TV programmes or films and listen for known words.
5. Read as many stories and news articles (5) as you can: it's the best way to learn vocabulary!
6. Work with a friend and try to test each other on important words.

(1) المفردات اللغوية
(2) بطاقات تعليمية
(3) منظم
(4) سياق
(5) مقالات

Read the advert for a language school in England. Would you like to study there? Why/Why not?

Lesson 6

SB page 62

English Language Summer School for Teenagers!

Do you want to improve (1) your English? Would you like to study in England with other young people from around the world? Come and stay at Hapstone House, in the south of England, for our summer courses! You can study every morning with our friendly (2), expert teachers and spend the afternoons doing sports or other activities.

Every weekend, we visit famous English places (like London or Oxford).

Learn English,
have fun,
visit England!

For more information (3), visit our website (4).

(1) يحسن
(2) ودود
(3) معلومات
(4) موقع إلكتروني

Post-reading question:

- How can we improve our English?

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Do you think it is better to work ..... or with friends? دمياط ٢٠٢٢
   a) alone b) along c) sadly d) loudly
2. Salem must ..... well for the next exam. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) fail b) revise c) pass d) manage
3. Study well and ..... your time to get higher marks. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٢
   a) succeed b) manage c) waste d) damage
4. I ..... a timetable for my daily routines, like waking up, eating and bedtime.
   a) do b) make c) study d) take
5. When joining a library, we need to fill in an application ..... .
   a) blog b) app c) farm d) form
6. We can ..... a picnic with our friends in the park.
   a) laugh b) organise c) explain d) summarise
7. Many students decided to have a summer ..... to improve their English.
   a) course b) address c) number d) dress
8. This research is organised ..... topic.
   a) for b) on c) by d) at
9. My farther took the ..... chair to repair it.
   a) broken b) breaking c) broke d) break
10. I understand the new word better when I read it in the ..... .
    a) blog b) language c) experiment d) context
11. I saw an advert ..... a new toy on TV and asked my parents if I could have it.
    a) at b) of c) for d) to
12. After playing outside for a while, I usually ..... a break.
    a) make b) take c) do d) make
13. The opposite of "known" is "..... ". أسيوط ٢٠٢٢
    a) unknown b) soft c) perfect d) popular
14. Workers have to ..... their skills to get good jobs. أسيوط ٢٠٢٢
    a) improve b) communicate c) connect d) prove
15. Personal ..... means telling someone about yourself.
    a) management b) equipment c) comment d) statement
16. They left the flat for months, so all the ..... was covered in dust.
    a) furniture b) address c) title d) timetable

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Dareen is telling Habiba about her holiday plans.

Habiba : Tell me about your holiday plans, Dareen.

Dareen : (1)..... .

Habiba : (2).....?

Dareen : Because I want to improve my English.

Habiba : (3).....?

Dareen : I will travel to England and study there.

Habiba : How long is the English course?

Dareen : (4)..... .

Habiba : Is a three-week course enough?

Dareen : (5)..... .

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I don't think you ..... that the problem is very dangerous.
   a) improve **b)** realise **c)** practise **d)** add
2. Nurses help patients to ..... better at hospitals.
   a) take **b)** cook **c)** get **d)** see
   بنى سويف ٢٠٢٢
3. You don't need games. You can ..... flashcards to help children learn these skills.
   a) do **b)** make **c)** hear **d)** think
4. He wants his children to be good at English, so they went to a ..... school.
   a) usual **b)** normal **c)** language **d)** summer
5. Students should make a study ..... to manage their time.
   a) exam **b)** whiteboard **c)** blackboard **d)** timetable
6. How often do you hear ..... your sister who lives in Italy?
   a) from **b)** about **c)** at **d)** by
7. Luckily, he ..... the exam although it was difficult.
   a) failed **b)** passed **c)** felt **d)** filled

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

8. It ..... when I got up this morning.
a) rains b) rained c) was raining d) is raining

9. If Ahmed ..... hard, he will win the race. قنا ٢٠٢٣
a) will train b) trained c) trains d) train

10. **A:** ..... you able to speak French? **B:** Yes, I am. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣
a) Were b) Are c) Can d) Do

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I ..... (not/know) much about art, but I like some artists.
2. Abdullah ..... (eat) when Nadeen came in.
3. Rasha ..... (going to) help her mother tomorrow. She has decided.
4. She usually ..... (travel) to Hurghada in summer. سوهاج ٢٠٢٣

4 Write an email of NINETY (90) words to your friend, Samar, to advise her on how to learn new vocabulary. Your name is Rania and your email address is rania@hotmail.com. Your friend's email address is samar@hotmail.com.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Challenging Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب

1. When I feel scared, I take deep breaths to ..... myself down.
a) let b) calm c) cute d) heat

2. The teacher ..... us on our spelling words, and I got all of them correct.
a) depended b) based c) tasted d) tested

3. During the trip to the zoo, I ..... how much I love animals.
a) realised b) recognised c) organised d) reminded

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

Review On Unit 12

Vocabulary

advantages	مميزات
body language	لغة الجسد
communicate (d)	يتواصل
connect to (ed)	يوصل بـ
dialect	لهجة/لغة بلد ما
directions	اتجاهات
disappointed (about)	محبط
expert	خبير
eye contact	الاتصال بالعين
facial expressions	تعبيرات الوجه
flashcards	بطاقات تعليمية
furniture	أثاث
home language	اللغة الأم
identity	هوية
instructions	تعليمات
learner	المتعلم
manage (d)	يدير/يتمكن
multilingual	متعدد اللغات
nationality	جنسية
organised	منظم
personal statement	بيان شخصي
proud (of)	فخور
realise (d)	يدرك
sounds	أصوات
summarise (d)	يلخص
timetable	جدول مواعيد
voice	صوت

Language

Tenses (present, past and future)

الأزمنة (مضارع - ماضٍ - مستقبل)

A) Present

- My uncle lives in the USA. I'm emailing him today.

B) Past

- I was playing tennis with my sister when it started to rain.
- I didn't use to like tennis! I used to like basketball.

C) Future

- Next year, I'm starting secondary school.
- I'm going to go to university. I'm not going to get a job.
- I think it will be hard but fun at university. It won't be boring.

Skills

Speaking

1 Talking about learning styles

1. How do you prefer to learn?
   - I like to learn in different ways.
2. What type of learning would you like to do more?
   - I learn best by doing things.
3. What type of learning would you like to do less?
   - I learn less by listening.

2 A presentation about studies

- What didn't you use to like to study but like to study now?
  - I didn't use to like to study history. But I like to study it now.
- What subjects do you like studying now? Why?
  - I like studying English and German because I like languages.

3 Advice, Opinions and Suggestions

- You **should be careful** about how you use your body and voice.
- **I think** that his cat understands him.
- **Let's talk** about the animals that you often see on a farm.

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

Question Bank

Al-Adwaa Test On Unit 12

24

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

1. Who did you use to be best friends with?
   a) My brother. b) My father.
   c) My sister. d) My mother.
2. How does he/she spend most of his/her time?
   a) On the internet. b) At the park.
   c) In the library. d) In the zoo.
3. How old is he/she?
   a) Twenty. b) Twelve.
   c) Thirty. d) Thirteen.
4. How does he/she communicate with other people?
   a) On social media. b) On the phone.
   c) By emails. d) By text messages.

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

A student asks a teacher about how to study new words. الجيزة ٢٠٢٢

Student : Can you give me some advice about studying new words?

Teacher : (1)..... . You write down new words in your notebook.

Student : (2).....?

Teacher : You should learn more than 10 words at one time.

Student : Does it help to learn words in sentences?

Teacher : (3)..... . Try to guess the meaning of new words.

Student : (4).....?

Teacher : A dictionary helps you by giving the word in a sentence.

Student : Thanks for your good advice.

Teacher : (5)..... .

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions: القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

There are many languages around the world. Some countries speak more than one language. Languages are very important to communicate with each other. People who speak more than one language have more advantages. **They** can talk to different people in different places and in different ways. When you are multilingual, you are able to understand both your home and the world better. It also gives people different identities. If you speak your **home language**, it connects you to your community. But an international language, like English, connects you to an international community.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What's the main idea of the passage? .....
2. What does the underlined pronoun "**They**" refer to? .....
3. What other advantages do you think people who speak more than one language have? .....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. To be multilingual means you can speak ..... languages.
   a) one b) two c) more than two d) less than two
5. "**Home language**" means ..... .
   a) dialect b) accent c) bilingual d) mother tongue
6. English is a/an ..... language.
   a) local b) national c) international d) multinational

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. They felt ..... when they lost the match.
   a) proud b) scared c) excited d) disappointed
2. My father was angry when I played next to him, so he told me to ..... . WB
   a) take away b) throw away c) run away d) go away
3. I will ..... what I have done. I know you don't have much time.
   a) summarise b) follow c) act d) fix
4. You need to ..... this form to join our club.
   a) make b) complete c) add d) get

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

5. Your home language ..... you to your community.
a) prefers b) hates c) communicates d) connects

6. We should always be ..... to do better in our life.
a) lazy b) recognised c) organised d) known

7. How long do you ..... to stay with your uncle?
a) connect b) pass c) talk d) plan

8. While ..... to school, I fell down. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣
a) running b) run c) runs d) ran

9. My cousin ..... with us at the moment. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣
a) stays b) is staying c) stayed d) staying

10. Sara usually ..... on black shoes but now she is wearing white trainers.
a) puts b) put c) was put d) is putting

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Ali was reading while Mum ..... (cook). الغربية ٢٠٢٣
2. The bus is ..... (leave) now. الغربية ٢٠٢٢
3. Last week, they ..... (go) to the cinema.
4. I think Ahmed ..... (arrive) next Thursday. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"An English course you are going to have"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Assess your progress ★ ★ ★ ★ ★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

Review D

Units 10, 11 & 12

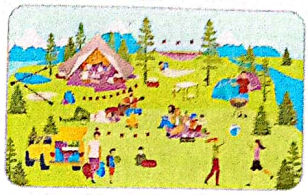
Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

Review D

Lesson 1

Listen to the talk about a school trip. What information is in the letter?

SB page 64



Voice: Next month is our school camping trip. We're leaving in three weeks and camping for three nights. The bus is leaving at 8 am on the 10th of May, and we will be back on the 13th at 6 pm. As you know, we're going to the desert, and it will be hot in the day and cold at night. You will need to bring loose, cool clothes for the day and warm night clothes. You will also need comfortable trainers because we're going to do lots of walking. You're going to be learning about life in the desert and about the geography of the area. You'll also need a camera, notebook and pen. Please take this letter for your parents which has all the information that you'll need.

Lesson 1

Listen to check your answers, then role-play the dialogue. *WB page 114*

Guide We're going to climb that big mountain today, Karim.

Karim Do you mean the mountain with the snow on top?

Guide No, we're going to climb the one with the tall, green trees on it.

Karim It looks a bit scary to me!

Guide From my point of view, it won't be scary if you wear the correct clothes.

Karim OK, what should I wear?

Guide You should wear these thick leather boots, and this hard, plastic hat.

Karim This hat is too big. Do you have a smaller size?

Guide Here you are. Does it fit?

Karim Yes, thank you.

Guide OK, let's go up the mountain!

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

Lesson 1

Pre-reading question:

- How did people use to send messages in the past?

Read the article again and answer the questions. *WB page 114*

New technology means that forms of **communication** are changing all the time. For example, think about how phones have **developed** over the last 20 years. In the past, people **used to type** messages using special letters on their phones. Then, people **started** to touch the screens on their phones to type their messages. Now, phones are able to understand people's **voices** and many people **are speaking** to their phones to send messages. Some scientists think that phones **are going to know** what people think in the future. Perhaps our phones will read our facial **expressions** before they send a message!

Lesson 2

Read the article about a shop and choose the correct words. *SB page 65*

On Monday, an exciting new shop is opening in the city centre. The Eco Shop only sells things that are **environment-friendly**.

Last week, we **talked** to the owner, Mariam El-Soory, about her new shop. "Lots of people want to help the environment, but it is sometimes difficult to know what to buy. We **are working** with lots of people to help local industries, too. So, we're going to sell local fruit and vegetables, **luxury, Egyptian cotton** clothes and other local things that don't damage the environment. You can also bring glass, plastic and paper to the shop for recycling. We will also have cooking and sewing classes at the shop soon".

Mariam **worked** for many years as a guide at a beach. She was sad because she **saw** a lot of plastic bags used for things from other countries on the beach. When she **was picking** up some rubbish one day, she decided she wanted to do more to help the environment and had the idea of a shop.

The shop is having an opening party **at** 1 pm in three days' time.

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض

Listening Texts

Unit 7 Test Yourself Lessons (1 & 2)

Life will be different in the future. We won't go to the beach for holidays. We will travel to the moon instead. People will travel there on fast rockets. It will take two hours.

Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 7

My name is Lama. I love online shopping. I ordered a new phone a week ago, but when it arrived, the screen was damaged. I sent them an email to change it for a new one.

Unit 8 Test Yourself Lessons (1 & 2)

I'm Ahmed. I'm on the school athletics team, and I go running in the morning, so I need food that gives me energy. I eat rice and fish for lunch.

Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 8

Sfenj is a kind of cake from Morocco. It has lots of sugar and fat in it and is very sweet, so it is not very healthy.

Unit 9 Test Yourself Lessons (1 & 2)

We will have an end-of-year show next month. It will be about the play we read in the English class. Mariam will sew costumes. Lara will do make-up. I'll write scripts.

Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 9

Jurassic World is an adventure film. The stars are Chris Pratt and Bryce Dallas Howard. It is about a theme park where scientists have helped dinosaurs to live again! Then some of the dinosaurs escaped.

Unit 10 Test Yourself Lessons (1 & 2)

In Ancient Egypt, men and women wore similar clothes. They both wore loose, white, linen clothes with a belt. Ancient Egyptians didn't wear shoes, but rich people wore expensive leather sandals.

Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 10

Some people are starting to use bamboo to make clothes. It is an important crop in China, where the bamboo industry makes a lot of money.

Unit 11 Test Yourself Lessons (1 & 2)

The rivers in Kaziranga National Park in India often flood, and the problem is getting worse because of climate change. I'm going to help my father to save wildlife from the flood water.

Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 11

Jenna : Hello, Kojo. How are you?
Kojo : I'm very well. How are you?
Jenna : Great! By the way, my husband and I are going to the theatre tonight. Would you and your wife like to join us?
Kojo : I'd love to, but we have other plans tonight. Maybe some other time.

Unit 12 Test Yourself Lessons (1 & 2)

The best way to remember English grammar for Dareen is to make up songs! Then, she sings the song quietly to herself. It is a great way to remember irregular verbs.

Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 12

My sister is thirteen. We used to be best friends, but now she doesn't want to talk to me very much. She is always on the internet or talking to people on her phone.

Challenging Questions Answers

Unit 7

Lessons (1 & 2)

1. b) will happen 2. c) be served 3. a) will come

Lessons (3 & 4)

1. I should read 2. should 3. should

Lessons (5 & 6)

1. a) heading 2. c) should 3. c) end

Unit 8

Lessons (1 & 2)

1. d) get 2. c) some 3. a) a

Lessons (3 & 4)

1. Don't tell 2. Don't be late 3. Be careful

Lessons (5 & 6)

1. d) fit enough 2. c) enough 3. b) upset

Unit 9

Lessons (1 & 2)

1. b) you are 2. b) pay for 3. c) can't

Lessons (3 & 4)

1. am not able 2. to 3. can't

Lessons (5 & 6)

1. b) nearly 2. a) scary 3. d) review

Unit 10

Lessons (1 & 2)

1. a) two very smart 2. d) although
3. d) big, green and yellow

Lessons (3 & 4)

1. ones 2. This/That 3. ones

Lessons (5 & 6)

1. d) emailed 2. d) perfectly 3. c) try on

Unit 11

Lessons (1 & 2)

1. a) planets 2. c) are 3. d) is going to

Lessons (3 & 4)

1. am travelling 2. are going
3. are going to fall 4. am meeting

Lessons (5 & 6)

1. are having 2. will help
3. is going to travel

Unit 12

Lessons (1 & 2)

1. d) practise 2. c) to 3. a) spell

Lessons (3 & 4)

1. is watching 2. rode 3. does

Lessons (5 & 6)

1. b) calm 2. d) tested 3. a) realised

رقم الإيداع: ٢٠٢٣ / ٢٠٤٧٨
ترخيص وزارة التربية والتعليم رقم:
٢٦٧/٢/١٠/١٠٣
طبعة: 2024
خدمة العملاء: 16766

جميع الحقوق محفوظة © لدار نهضة مصر للنشر
يحظر طبع أو نشر أو تصوير أو تخزين
أى جزء من هذا الكتاب بأية وسيلة إلكترونية أو ميكانيكية
أو بالتصوير أو خلاف ذلك إلا بإذن كتابى صريح من الناشر.

Motive2Learn - مستر/ عبد الرحمن عوض